



# **Administer StorageGRID**

## **StorageGRID**

NetApp  
October 03, 2025



# Table of Contents

Administer StorageGRID .....	1
Administering a StorageGRID system .....	1
Web browser requirements .....	1
Signing in to the Grid Manager .....	2
Signing out of the Grid Manager .....	6
Changing your password .....	7
Changing the provisioning passphrase .....	7
Changing the browser session timeout .....	9
Viewing StorageGRID license information .....	10
Updating StorageGRID license information .....	11
Using the Grid Management API .....	11
Using StorageGRID security certificates .....	24
Controlling administrator access to StorageGRID .....	30
Controlling access through firewalls .....	31
Using identity federation .....	32
Managing admin groups .....	37
Managing local users .....	46
Using single sign-on (SSO) for StorageGRID .....	47
Configuring administrator client certificates .....	65
Configuring key management servers .....	72
What is a key management server (KMS)? .....	72
Reviewing StorageGRID encryption methods .....	73
Overview of KMS and appliance configuration .....	75
Considerations and requirements for using a key management server .....	78
Considerations for changing the KMS for a site .....	81
Configuring StorageGRID as a client in the KMS .....	84
Adding a key management server (KMS) .....	85
Viewing KMS details .....	93
Viewing encrypted nodes .....	94
Editing a key management server (KMS) .....	96
Removing a key management server (KMS) .....	99
Managing tenants .....	101
What tenant accounts are .....	101
Creating and configuring tenant accounts .....	101
Configuring S3 tenants .....	102
Configuring Swift tenants .....	102
Creating a tenant account .....	103
Changing the password for a tenant's local root user .....	110
Editing a tenant account .....	111
Deleting a tenant account .....	113
Managing platform services for S3 tenant accounts .....	113
Configuring S3 and Swift client connections .....	122
Summary: IP addresses and ports for client connections .....	122



Managing load balancing . . . . .	125
Managing untrusted Client Networks . . . . .	135
Managing high availability groups . . . . .	137
Configuring S3 API endpoint domain names . . . . .	149
Enabling HTTP for client communications . . . . .	151
Controlling which client operations are permitted . . . . .	152
Managing StorageGRID networks and connections . . . . .	153
Guidelines for StorageGRID networks . . . . .	153
Viewing IP addresses . . . . .	154
Supported ciphers for outgoing TLS connections . . . . .	155
Changing network transfer encryption . . . . .	156
Configuring server certificates . . . . .	157
Configuring Storage proxy settings . . . . .	163
Configuring Admin proxy settings . . . . .	165
Managing traffic classification policies . . . . .	166
What link costs are . . . . .	179
Configuring AutoSupport . . . . .	181
Information included in AutoSupport messages . . . . .	181
Using Active IQ . . . . .	182
Accessing AutoSupport settings . . . . .	182
Protocols for sending AutoSupport messages . . . . .	183
AutoSupport options . . . . .	183
Specifying the protocol for AutoSupport messages . . . . .	184
Enabling AutoSupport on Demand . . . . .	185
Disabling weekly AutoSupport messages . . . . .	186
Disabling event-triggered AutoSupport messages . . . . .	187
Manually triggering an AutoSupport message . . . . .	188
Adding an additional AutoSupport destination . . . . .	189
Sending E-Series AutoSupport messages through StorageGRID . . . . .	191
Troubleshooting AutoSupport messages . . . . .	195
Managing Storage Nodes . . . . .	197
What a Storage Node is . . . . .	197
Managing Storage Options . . . . .	201
Managing object metadata storage . . . . .	205
Configuring global settings for stored objects . . . . .	212
Storage Node configuration settings . . . . .	215
Managing full Storage Nodes . . . . .	219
Managing Admin Nodes . . . . .	220
What an Admin Node is . . . . .	220
Using multiple Admin Nodes . . . . .	221
Identifying the primary Admin Node . . . . .	222
Selecting a preferred sender . . . . .	223
Viewing notification status and queues . . . . .	224
How Admin Nodes show acknowledged alarms (legacy system) . . . . .	225
Configuring audit client access . . . . .	225



Managing Archive Nodes .....	242
What an Archive Node is .....	242
Configuring Archive Node connections to archival storage .....	243
Setting Custom alarms for the Archive Node .....	257
Integrating Tivoli Storage Manager .....	258
Migrating data into StorageGRID .....	264
Confirming capacity of the StorageGRID system .....	265
Determining the ILM policy for migrated data .....	265
Impact of migration on operations .....	266
Scheduling data migration .....	266
Monitoring data migration .....	266
Creating custom notifications for migration alarms .....	267



# Administer StorageGRID

Learn how to configure the StorageGRID system.

- [Administering a StorageGRID system](#)
- [Controlling administrator access to StorageGRID](#)
- [Configuring key management servers](#)
- [Managing tenants](#)
- [Configuring S3 and Swift client connections](#)
- [Managing StorageGRID networks and connections](#)
- [Configuring AutoSupport](#)
- [Managing Storage Nodes](#)
- [Managing Admin Nodes](#)
- [Managing Archive Nodes](#)
- [Migrating data into StorageGRID](#)

## Administering a StorageGRID system

Use these instructions to configure and administer a StorageGRID system.

These instructions describe how to use the Grid Manager to set up groups and users, create tenant accounts to allow S3 and Swift client applications to store and retrieve objects, configure and manage StorageGRID networks, configure AutoSupport, manage node settings, and more.



The instructions for managing objects with information lifecycle management (ILM) rules and policies have been moved to [Manage objects with ILM](#).

These instructions are for technical personnel who will be configuring, administering, and supporting a StorageGRID system after it has been installed.

### What you'll need

- You have a general understanding of the StorageGRID system.
- You have fairly detailed knowledge of Linux command shells, networking, and server hardware setup and configuration.

### Web browser requirements

You must use a supported web browser.

Web browser	Minimum supported version
Google Chrome	87
Microsoft Edge	87



Web browser	Minimum supported version
Mozilla Firefox	84

You should set the browser window to a recommended width.

Browser width	Pixels
Minimum	1024
Optimum	1280

## Signing in to the Grid Manager

You access the Grid Manager sign-in page by entering the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address of an Admin Node into the address bar of a supported web browser.

### What you'll need

- You must have your login credentials.
- You must have the URL for the Grid Manager.
- You must be using a supported web browser.
- Cookies must be enabled in your web browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

Each StorageGRID system includes one primary Admin Node and any number of non-primary Admin Nodes. You can sign in to the Grid Manager on any Admin Node to manage the StorageGRID system. However, the Admin Nodes are not exactly the same:

- Alarm acknowledgments (legacy system) made on one Admin Node are not copied to other Admin Nodes. For this reason, the information displayed for alarms might not look the same on each Admin Node.
- Some maintenance procedures can only be performed from the primary Admin Node.

If Admin Nodes are included in a high availability (HA) group, you connect using the virtual IP address of the HA group or a fully qualified domain name that maps to the virtual IP address. The primary Admin Node should be selected as the group's preferred Master, so that when you access the Grid Manager, you access it on the primary Admin Node unless the primary Admin Node is not available.

### Steps

1. Launch a supported web browser.
2. In the browser's address bar, enter the URL for the Grid Manager:

`https://FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP/`

where *FQDN\_or\_Admin\_Node\_IP* is a fully qualified domain name or the IP address of an Admin Node or the virtual IP address of an HA group of Admin Nodes.



If you must access the Grid Manager on a port other than the standard port for HTTPS (443), enter the following, where *FQDN\_or\_Admin\_Node\_IP* is a fully qualified domain name or IP address, and port is the port number:

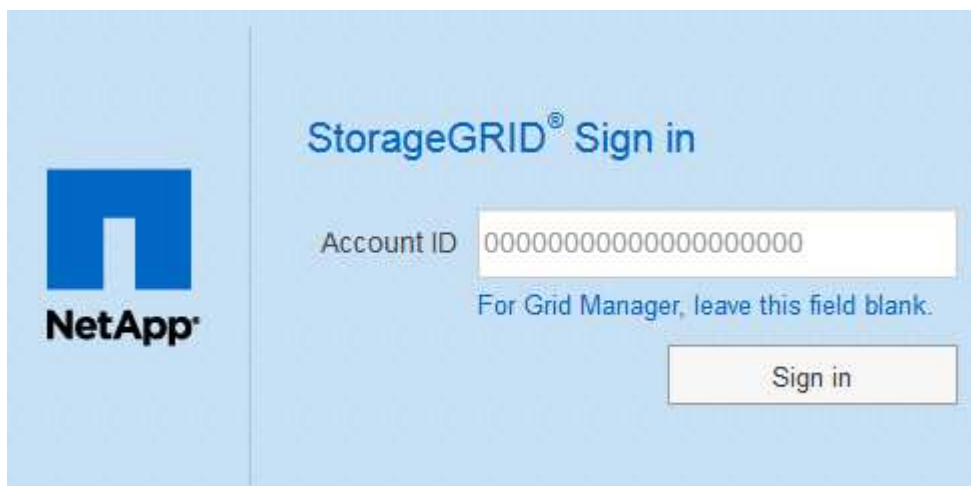
`https://FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP:port/`

3. If you are prompted with a security alert, install the certificate using the browser's installation wizard.
4. Sign in to the Grid Manager:
  - If single sign-on (SSO) is not being used for your StorageGRID system:
    - i. Enter your username and password for the Grid Manager.
    - ii. Click **Sign In**.



The image shows the StorageGRID Grid Manager login interface. On the left is the NetApp logo. The main heading is "StorageGRID® Grid Manager". Below this are two input fields: "Username" and "Password". To the right of these fields is a "Sign in" button.

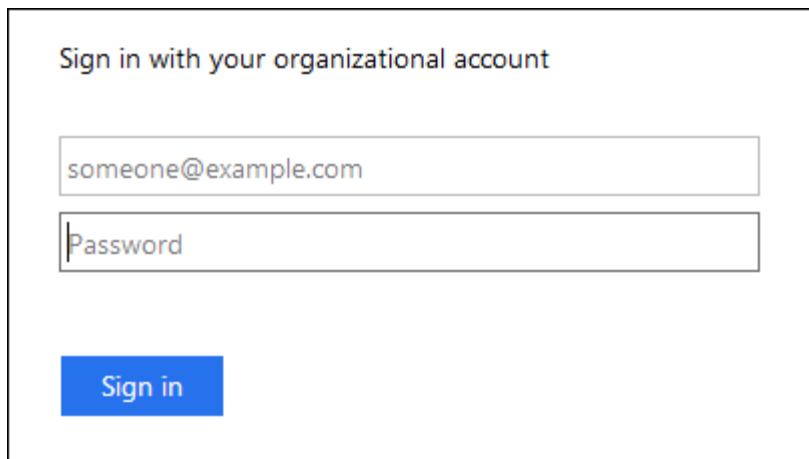
- If SSO is enabled for your StorageGRID system and this is the first time you have accessed the URL on this browser:
  - i. Click **Sign in**. You can leave the Account ID field blank.



The image shows the StorageGRID Sign in interface. On the left is the NetApp logo. The main heading is "StorageGRID® Sign in". Below this is an "Account ID" input field containing a series of zeros. Below the input field is the text "For Grid Manager, leave this field blank." To the right of the input field is a "Sign in" button.

- ii. Enter your standard SSO credentials on your organization's SSO sign-in page. For example:





Sign in with your organizational account

someone@example.com

Password

Sign in

- If SSO is enabled for your StorageGRID system and you have previously accessed the Grid Manager or a tenant account:
  - i. Do either of the following:
    - Enter **0** (the account ID for the Grid Manager), and click **Sign in**.
    - Select **Grid Manager** if it appears in the list of recent accounts, and click **Sign in**.



StorageGRID® Sign in

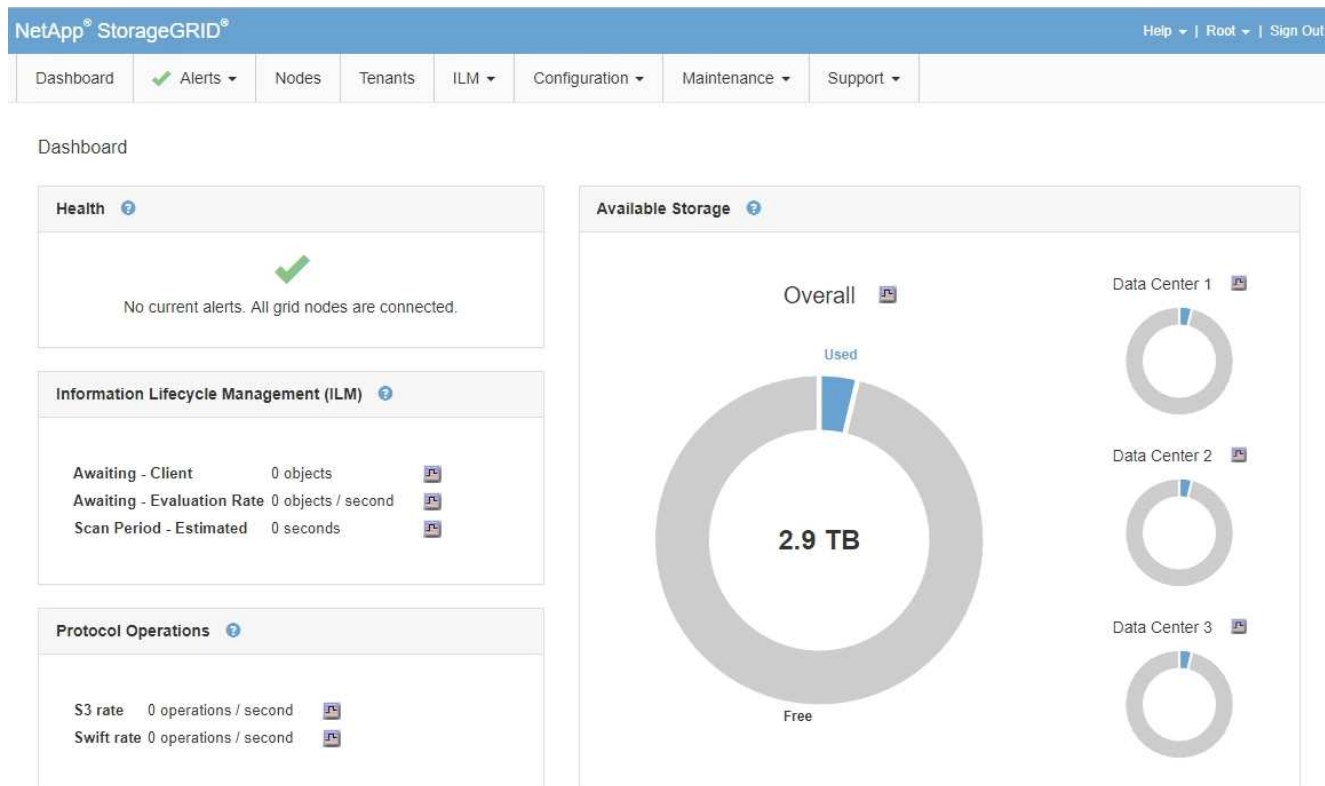
Recent Grid Manager

Account ID 0

Sign in

- ii. Sign in with your standard SSO credentials on your organization's SSO sign-in page. When you are signed in, the home page of the Grid Manager appears, which includes the Dashboard. To learn what information is provided, see "Viewing the Dashboard" in the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID.





5. If you want to sign in to another Admin Node:

Option	Steps
SSO not enabled	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the browser's address bar, enter the fully qualified domain name or IP address of the other Admin Node. Include the port number as required.</li> <li>Enter your username and password for the Grid Manager.</li> <li>Click <b>Sign In</b>.</li> </ol>
SSO enabled	<p>In the browser's address bar, enter the fully qualified domain name or IP address of the other Admin Node.</p> <p>If you have signed in to one Admin Node, you can access other Admin Nodes without having to sign in again. However, if your SSO session expires, you are prompted for your credentials again.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> SSO is not available on the restricted Grid Manager port. You must use the default HTTPS port (443) if you want users to authenticate with single sign-on.</p>

## Related information

[Web browser requirements](#)



[Controlling access through firewalls](#)

[Configuring server certificates](#)

[Configuring single sign-on](#)

[Managing admin groups](#)

[Managing high availability groups](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

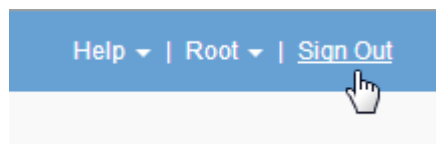
[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

## Signing out of the Grid Manager

When you are done working with the Grid Manager, you must sign out to ensure that unauthorized users cannot access the StorageGRID system. Closing your browser might not sign you out of the system, based on browser cookie settings.

### Steps

1. Locate the **Sign Out** link in the top-right corner of the user interface.



2. Click **Sign Out**.

Option	Description
SSO not in use	<p>You are signed out of the Admin Node.</p> <p>The Grid Manager sign in page is displayed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you signed into more than one Admin Node, you must sign out of each node.</p>
SSO enabled	<p>You are signed out of all Admin Nodes you were accessing. The StorageGRID sign in page is displayed. <b>Grid Manager</b> is listed as the default in the <b>Recent Accounts</b> drop-down, and the <b>Account ID</b> field shows 0.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If SSO is enabled and you are also signed in to the Tenant Manager, you must also sign out of the tenant account to sign out of SSO.</p>

### Related information

[Configuring single sign-on](#)



## Changing your password

If you are a local user of the Grid Manager, you can change your own password.

### What you'll need

You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

### About this task

If you sign in to StorageGRID as a federated user or if single sign-on (SSO) is enabled, you cannot change your password in Grid Manager. Instead, you must change your password in the external identity source, for example, Active Directory or OpenLDAP.

### Steps

1. From the Grid Manager header, select ***your name* > Change password**.
2. Enter your current password.
3. Type a new password.

Your password must contain at least 8 and no more than 32 characters. Passwords are case-sensitive.

4. Re-enter the new password.
5. Click **Save**.

## Changing the provisioning passphrase

Use this procedure to change the StorageGRID provisioning passphrase. The passphrase is required for recovery, expansion, and maintenance procedures. The passphrase is also required to download Recovery Package backups that include the grid topology information and encryption keys for the StorageGRID system.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have Maintenance or Root Access permissions.
- You must have the current provisioning passphrase.

### About this task

The provisioning passphrase is required for many installation and maintenance procedures, and for downloading the Recovery Package. The provisioning passphrase is not listed in the `Passwords.txt` file. Make sure to document the provisioning passphrase and keep it in a safe and secure location.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Grid Passwords**.



NetApp® StorageGRID®
Help ▾ | Root ▾ | Sign Out

Dashboard
Alerts ▾
Nodes
Tenants
ILM ▾
Configuration ▾
Maintenance ▾
Support ▾

Grid Passwords

Change the provisioning passphrase and other passwords for your StorageGRID system.

Change Provisioning Passphrase

The provisioning passphrase is required for any installation, expansion, or maintenance procedure that makes changes to the grid topology. This passphrase is also required to download backups of the grid topology information and encryption keys for the StorageGRID system. After changing the provisioning passphrase, you must download a new Recovery Package.

Current Provisioning Passphrase

New Provisioning Passphrase

Confirm New Provisioning Passphrase

Save

2. Enter your current provisioning passphrase.
3. Enter the new passphrase. The passphrase must contain at least 8 and no more than 32 characters. Passphrases are case-sensitive.



Store the new provisioning passphrase in a secure location. It is required for installation, expansion, and maintenance procedures.

4. Re-enter the new passphrase, and click **Save**.

The system displays a green success banner when the provisioning passphrase change is complete. The change should take less than a minute.

NetApp® StorageGRID®
Help ▾ | Root ▾ | Sign Out

Dashboard
Alerts ▾
Nodes
Tenants
ILM ▾
Configuration ▾
Maintenance ▾
Support ▾

Grid Passwords

Change the provisioning passphrase and other passwords for your StorageGRID system.

Provisioning passphrase successfully changed. Go to the [Recovery Package page](#) to download a new Recovery Package.

Change Provisioning Passphrase

The provisioning passphrase is required for any installation, expansion, or maintenance procedure that makes changes to the grid topology. This passphrase is also required to download backups of the grid topology information and encryption keys for the StorageGRID system. After changing the provisioning passphrase, you must download a new Recovery Package.

Current Provisioning Passphrase

New Provisioning Passphrase

Confirm New Provisioning Passphrase

Save

5. Select the **Recovery Package page** link inside the success banner.
6. Download the new Recovery Package from the Grid Manager. Select **Maintenance > Recovery Package**



and enter the new provisioning passphrase.



After changing the provisioning passphrase, you must immediately download a new Recovery Package. The Recovery Package file allows you to restore the system if a failure occurs.

## Changing the browser session timeout

You can control whether Grid Manager and Tenant Manager users are signed out if they are inactive for more than a certain amount of time.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

The GUI Inactivity Timeout defaults to 900 seconds (15 minutes). If a user's browser session is not active for this amount of time, the session times out.

As required, you can increase or decrease the timeout period by setting the GUI Inactivity Timeout display option.

If single sign-on (SSO) is enabled and a user's browser session times out, the system behaves as if the user clicked **Sign Out** manually. The user must reenter their SSO credentials to access StorageGRID again.

User session timeout can also be controlled by the following:



- A separate, non-configurable StorageGRID timer, which is included for system security. By default, each user's authentication token expires 16 hours after the user signs in. When a user's authentication expires, that user is automatically signed out, even if the value for the GUI Inactivity Timeout has not been reached. To renew the token, the user must sign back in.
- Timeout settings for the identity provider, assuming SSO is enabled for StorageGRID.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Display Options**.
2. For **GUI Inactivity Timeout**, enter a timeout period of 60 seconds or more.

Set this field to 0 if you do not want to use this functionality. Users are signed out 16 hours after they sign in, when their authentication tokens expire.





## Display Options

Updated: 2017-03-09 20:36:53 MST

Current Sender

ADMIN-DC1-ADM1

Preferred Sender

ADMIN-DC1-ADM1

GUI Inactivity Timeout

900

Notification Suppress All



Apply Changes



### 3. Click **Apply Changes**.

The new setting does not affect currently signed in users. Users must sign in again or refresh their browsers for the new timeout setting to take effect.

#### Related information

[How single sign-on works](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

## Viewing StorageGRID license information

You can view the license information for your StorageGRID system, such as the maximum storage capacity of your grid, whenever necessary.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

#### About this task

If there is an issue with the software license for this StorageGRID system, the Health panel on the Dashboard includes a License Status icon and a **License** link. The number indicates how many license-related issues there are.

### Dashboard





## Step

To view the license, do one of the following:

- From the Health panel on the Dashboard, click the License status icon or the **License** link. This link appears only if there is an issue with the license.
- Select **Maintenance > System > License**.

The License Page appears and provides the following, read-only information about the current license:

- StorageGRID system ID, which is the unique identification number for this StorageGRID installation
- License serial number
- Licensed storage capacity of the grid
- Software license end date
- Support service contract end date
- Contents of the license text file



For licenses issued before StorageGRID 10.3, the licensed storage capacity is not included in the license file, and a "See License Agreement" message is displayed instead of a value.

## Updating StorageGRID license information

You must update the license information for your StorageGRID system any time the terms of your license change. For example, you must update the license information if you purchase additional storage capacity for your grid.

### What you'll need

- You must have a new license file to apply to your StorageGRID system.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must have the provisioning passphrase.

### Steps

1. Select **Maintenance > System > License**.
2. Enter the provisioning passphrase for your StorageGRID system in the **Provisioning Passphrase** text box.
3. Click **Browse**.
4. In the Open dialog box, locate and select the new license file (.txt), and click **Open**.

The new license file is validated and displayed.

5. Click **Save**.

## Using the Grid Management API

You can perform system management tasks using the Grid Management REST API instead of the Grid Manager user interface. For example, you might want to use the API to automate operations or to create multiple entities, such as users, more quickly.



The Grid Management API uses the Swagger open source API platform. Swagger provides an intuitive user interface that allows developers and non-developers to perform real-time operations in StorageGRID with the API.

## Top-level resources

The Grid Management API provides the following top-level resources:

- `/grid`: Access is restricted to Grid Manager users and is based on the configured group permissions.
- `/org`: Access is restricted to users who belong to a local or federated LDAP group for a tenant account. For details, see the information about using tenant accounts.
- `/private`: Access is restricted to Grid Manager users and is based on the configured group permissions. These APIs are intended for internal use only and are not publicly documented. These APIs are also subject to change without notice.

## Related information

[Use a tenant account](#)

[Prometheus: Query basics](#)

## Grid Management API operations

The Grid Management API organizes the available API operations into the following sections.

- **accounts** — Operations to manage storage tenant accounts, including creating new accounts and retrieving storage usage for a given account.
- **alarms** — Operations to list current alarms (legacy system), and return information about the health of the grid, including the current alerts and a summary of node connection states.
- **alert-history** — Operations on resolved alerts.
- **alert-receivers** — Operations on alert notification receivers (email).
- **alert-rules** — Operations on alert rules.
- **alert-silences** — Operations on alert silences.
- **alerts** — Operations on alerts.
- **audit** — Operations to list and update the audit configuration.
- **auth** — Operations to perform user session authentication.

The Grid Management API supports the Bearer Token Authentication Scheme. To sign in, you provide a username and password in the JSON body of the authentication request (that is, `POST /api/v3/authorize`). If the user is successfully authenticated, a security token is returned. This token must be provided in the header of subsequent API requests ("Authorization: Bearer *token*").



If single sign-on is enabled for the StorageGRID system, you must perform different steps to authenticate. See “Authenticating in to the API if single sign-on is enabled.”

See “Protecting against Cross-Site Request Forgery” for information on improving authentication security.

- **client-certificates** — Operations to configure client certificates so that StorageGRID can be accessed



securely using external monitoring tools.

- **config** — Operations related to the product release and versions of the Grid Management API. You can list the product release version and the major versions of the Grid Management API supported by that release, and you can disable deprecated versions of the API.
- **deactivated-features** — Operations to view features that might have been deactivated.
- **dns-servers** — Operations to list and change configured external DNS servers.
- **endpoint-domain-names** — Operations to list and change endpoint domain names.
- **erasure-coding** — Operations on Erasure Coding profiles.
- **expansion** — Operations on expansion (procedure-level).
- **expansion-nodes** — Operations on expansion (node-level).
- **expansion-sites** — Operations on expansion (site-level).
- **grid-networks** — Operations to list and change the Grid Network List.
- **grid-passwords** — Operations for grid password management.
- **groups** — Operations to manage local Grid Administrator Groups and to retrieve federated Grid Administrator Groups from an external LDAP server.
- **identity-source** — Operations to configure an external identity source and to manually synchronize federated group and user information.
- **ilm** — Operations on information lifecycle management (ILM).
- **license** — Operations to retrieve and update the StorageGRID license.
- **logs** — Operations for collecting and downloading log files.
- **metrics** — Operations on StorageGRID metrics including instant metric queries at a single point in time and range metric queries over a range of time. The Grid Management API uses the Prometheus systems monitoring tool as the backend data source. For information about constructing Prometheus queries, see the Prometheus web site.



Metrics that include *private* in their names are intended for internal use only. These metrics are subject to change between StorageGRID releases without notice.

- **node-health** — Operations on node health status.
- **ntp-servers** — Operations to list or update external Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers.
- **objects** — Operations on objects and object metadata.
- **recovery** — Operations for the recovery procedure.
- **recovery-package** — Operations to download the Recovery Package.
- **regions** — Operations to view and create regions.
- **s3-object-lock** — Operations on global S3 Object Lock settings.
- **server-certificate** — Operations to view and update Grid Manager server certificates.
- **snmp** — Operations on the current SNMP configuration.
- **traffic-classes** — Operations for traffic classification policies.
- **untrusted-client-network** — Operations on the untrusted Client Network configuration.
- **users** — Operations to view and manage Grid Manager users.



## Issuing API requests

The Swagger user interface provides complete details and documentation for each API operation.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.



Any API operations you perform using the API Docs webpage are live operations. Be careful not to create, update, or delete configuration data or other data by mistake.

### Steps

1. Select **Help > API Documentation** from the Grid Manager header.
2. Select the desired operation.

When you expand an API operation, you can see the available HTTP actions, such as GET, PUT, UPDATE, and DELETE.

3. Select an HTTP action to see the request details, including the endpoint URL, a list of any required or optional parameters, an example of the request body (when required), and the possible responses.



GET

/grid/groups Lists Grid Administrator Groups

🔒

Parameters Try it out

Name	Description
type string <small>(query)</small>	filter by group type Available values : local, federated <div>— ▼</div>
limit integer <small>(query)</small>	maximum number of results Default value : 25 <div>25</div>
marker string <small>(query)</small>	marker-style pagination offset (value is Group's URN) <div>marker - marker-style pagination offset (value</div>
includeMarker boolean <small>(query)</small>	if set, the marker element is also returned <div>— ▼</div>
order string <small>(query)</small>	pagination order (desc requires marker) Available values : asc, desc <div>— ▼</div>

Responses

Response content type application/json ▼

Code	Description
200	successfully retrieved Example Value   Model <pre>{   "responseTime": "2021-03-29T14:22:19.673Z",   "status": "success",   "apiVersion": "3.3",   "deprecated": false,   "data": [     {       "displayName": "Developers", </pre>

- Determine if the request requires additional parameters, such as a group or user ID. Then, obtain these values. You might need to issue a different API request first to get the information you need.
- Determine if you need to modify the example request body. If so, you can click **Model** to learn the requirements for each field.
- Click **Try it out**.
- Provide any required parameters, or modify the request body as required.
- Click **Execute**.
- Review the response code to determine if the request was successful.



## Grid Management API versioning

The Grid Management API uses versioning to support non-disruptive upgrades.

For example, this Request URL specifies version 3 of the API.

```
https://hostname_or_ip_address/api/v3/authorize
```

The major version of the Tenant Management API is bumped when changes are made that are **not compatible** with older versions. The minor version of the Tenant Management API is bumped when changes are made that **are compatible** with older versions. Compatible changes include the addition of new endpoints or new properties. The following example illustrates how the API version is bumped based on the type of changes made.

Type of change to API	Old version	New version
Compatible with older versions	2.1	2.2
Not compatible with older versions	2.1	3.0

When you install StorageGRID software for the first time, only the most recent version of the Grid Management API is enabled. However, when you upgrade to a new feature release of StorageGRID, you continue to have access to the older API version for at least one StorageGRID feature release.



You can use the Grid Management API to configure the supported versions. See the “config” section of the Swagger API documentation for more information. You should deactivate support for the older version after updating all Grid Management API clients to use the newer version.

Outdated requests are marked as deprecated in the following ways:

- The response header is "Deprecated: true"
- The JSON response body includes "deprecated": true
- A deprecated warning is added to nms.log. For example:

```
Received call to deprecated v1 API at POST "/api/v1/authorize"
```

### Determining which API versions are supported in the current release

Use the following API request to return a list of the supported API major versions:



```
GET https://{{IP-Address}}/api/versions
{
  "responseTime": "2019-01-10T20:41:00.845Z",
  "status": "success",
  "apiVersion": "3.0",
  "data": [
    2,
    3
  ]
}
```

### Specifying an API version for a request

You can specify the API version using a path parameter (/api/v3) or a header (Api-Version: 3). If you provide both values, the header value overrides the path value.

```
curl https://[IP-Address]/api/v3/grid/accounts

curl -H "Api-Version: 3" https://[IP-Address]/api/grid/accounts
```

### Protecting against Cross-Site Request Forgery (CSRF)

You can help protect against Cross-Site Request Forgery (CSRF) attacks against StorageGRID by using CSRF tokens to enhance authentication that uses cookies. The Grid Manager and Tenant Manager automatically enable this security feature; other API clients can choose whether to enable it when they sign in.

An attacker that can trigger a request to a different site (such as with an HTTP form POST) can cause certain requests to be made using the signed-in user's cookies.

StorageGRID helps protect against CSRF attacks by using CSRF tokens. When enabled, the contents of a specific cookie must match the contents of either a specific header or a specific POST body parameter.

To enable the feature, set the `csrfToken` parameter to `true` during authentication. The default is `false`.

```
curl -X POST --header "Content-Type: application/json" --header "Accept:
application/json" -d "{
  \"username\": \"MyUserName\",
  \"password\": \"MyPassword\",
  \"cookie\": true,
  \"csrfToken\": true
}" "https://example.com/api/v3/authorize"
```

When `true`, a `GridCsrfToken` cookie is set with a random value for sign-ins to the Grid Manager, and the `AccountCsrfToken` cookie is set with a random value for sign-ins to the Tenant Manager.



If the cookie is present, all requests that can modify the state of the system (POST, PUT, PATCH, DELETE) must include one of the following:

- The `X-Csrf-Token` header, with the value of the header set to the value of the CSRF token cookie.
- For endpoints that accept a form-encoded body: A `csrfToken` form-encoded request body parameter.

See the online API documentation for additional examples and details.



Requests that have a CSRF token cookie set will also enforce the `"Content-Type: application/json"` header for any request that expects a JSON request body as an additional protection against CSRF attacks.

## Using the API if single sign-on is enabled

If single sign-on (SSO) has been enabled for your StorageGRID system, you cannot use the standard Authenticate API requests to sign in to and sign out of the Grid Management API or the Tenant Management API.

### Signing in to the API if single sign-on is enabled

If single sign-on (SSO) has been enabled, you must issue a series of API requests to obtain an authentication token from AD FS that is valid for the Grid Management API or the Tenant Management API.

### What you'll need

- You know the SSO username and password for a federated user who belongs to a StorageGRID user group.
- If you want to access the Tenant Management API, you know the tenant account ID.

### About this task

To obtain an authentication token, you can use one of the following examples:

- The `storagegrid-ssoauth.py` Python script, which is located in the StorageGRID installation files directory (`./rpms` for Red Hat Enterprise Linux or CentOS, `./debs` for Ubuntu or Debian, and `./vsphere` for VMware).
- An example workflow of curl requests.

The curl workflow might time out if you perform it too slowly. You might see the error: A valid SubjectConfirmation was not found on this Response.



The example curl workflow does not protect the password from being seen by other users.

If you have a URL-encoding issue, you might see the error: Unsupported SAML version.

## Steps

1. Select one of the following methods to obtain an authentication token:
  - Use the `storagegrid-ssoauth.py` Python script. Go to step 2.
  - Use curl requests. Go to step 3.
2. If you want to use the `storagegrid-ssoauth.py` script, pass the script to the Python interpreter and run



the script.

When prompted, enter values for the following arguments:

- The SSO username
- The domain where StorageGRID is installed
- The address for StorageGRID
- If you want to access the Tenant Management API, enter tenant account ID.

```
python3 /tmp/storagegrid-ssoauth.py
saml_user: my-sso-username
saml_domain: my-domain
sg_address: storagegrid.example.com
tenant_account_id: 12345
Enter the user's SAML password:
*****
*****
StorageGRID Auth Token: 56eb07bf-21f6-40b7-af0b-5c6cacfb25e7
```

The StorageGRID authorization token is provided in the output. You can now use the token for other requests, similar to how you would use the API if SSO was not being used.

3. If you want to use curl requests, use the following procedure.

a. Declare the variables needed to sign in.

```
export SAMLUSER='my-sso-username'
export SAMLPASSWORD='my-password'
export SAMLDOMAIN='my-domain'
export TENANTACCOUNTID='12345'
export STORAGEGRID_ADDRESS='storagegrid.example.com'
export AD_FS_ADDRESS='adfs.example.com'
```



To access the Grid Management API, use 0 as TENANTACCOUNTID.

b. To receive a signed authentication URL, issue a POST request to `/api/v3/authorize-saml`, and remove the additional JSON encoding from the response.

This example shows a POST request for a signed authentication URL for TENANTACCOUNTID. The results will be passed to `python -m json.tool` to remove the JSON encoding.

```
curl -X POST "https://$STORAGEGRID_ADDRESS/api/v3/authorize-saml" \
-H "accept: application/json" -H "Content-Type: application/json" \
--data "{\"accountId\": \"$TENANTACCOUNTID\"}" | python -m
json.tool
```



The response for this example includes a signed URL that is URL-encoded, but it does not include the additional JSON-encoding layer.

```
{
  "apiVersion": "3.0",
  "data":
  "https://ads.example.com/ads/ls/?SAMLRequest=fZHLbsIwEEV%2FJTuv7...
  sSl%2BfQ33cvfwA%3D&RelayState=12345",
  "responseTime": "2018-11-06T16:30:23.355Z",
  "status": "success"
}
```

- c. Save the `SAMLRequest` from the response for use in subsequent commands.

```
export SAMLREQUEST='fZHLbsIwEEV%2FJTuv7...sSl%2BfQ33cvfwA%3D'
```

- d. Get a full URL that includes the client request ID from AD FS.

One option is to request the login form using the URL from the previous response.

```
curl
"https://$AD_FS_ADDRESS/ads/ls/?SAMLRequest=$SAMLREQUEST&RelayState=
$TENANTACCOUNTID" | grep 'form method="post" id="loginForm"'
```

The response includes the client request ID:

```
<form method="post" id="loginForm" autocomplete="off"
novalidate="novalidate" onKeyPress="if (event && event.keyCode == 13)
Login.submitLoginRequest();" action="/ads/ls/?
SAMLRequest=fZHRTOMwFIZfzb...UJikvo77sXPw%3D%3D&RelayState=12345&clie
nt-request-id=00000000-0000-0000-ee02-0080000000de" >
```

- e. Save the client request ID from the response.

```
export SAMLREQUESTID='00000000-0000-0000-ee02-0080000000de'
```

- f. Send your credentials to the form action from the previous response.



```
curl -X POST
"https://$AD_FS_ADDRESS/adfs/ls/?SAMLRequest=$SAMLREQUEST&RelayState=
$TENANTACCOUNTID&client-request-id=$SAMLREQUESTID" \
--data
"UserName=$SAMLUSER@$SAMLDOMAIN&Password=$SAMLPASSWORD&AuthMethod=FormsAuthentication" --include
```

AD FS returns a 302 redirect, with additional information in the headers.



If multi-factor authentication (MFA) is enabled for your SSO system, the form post will also contain the second password or other credentials.

```
HTTP/1.1 302 Found
Content-Length: 0
Content-Type: text/html; charset=utf-8
Location:
https://adfs.example.com/adfs/ls/?SAMLRequest=fZHRT0MwFIZfhb...UJikvo
77sXPw%3D%3D&RelayState=12345&client-request-id=00000000-0000-0000-
ee02-0080000000de
Set-Cookie: MSISAuth=AAEAADAvsHpXk6ApV...pmP0aEiNtJvWY=; path=/adfs;
HttpOnly; Secure
Date: Tue, 06 Nov 2018 16:55:05 GMT
```

g. Save the MSISAuth cookie from the response.

```
export MSISAuth='AAEAADAvsHpXk6ApV...pmP0aEiNtJvWY='
```

h. Send a GET request to the specified location with the cookies from the authentication POST.

```
curl
"https://$AD_FS_ADDRESS/adfs/ls/?SAMLRequest=$SAMLREQUEST&RelayState=
$TENANTACCOUNTID&client-request-id=$SAMLREQUESTID" \
--cookie "MSISAuth=$MSISAuth" --include
```

The response headers will contain AD FS session information for later logout usage, and the response body contains the SAMLResponse in a hidden form field.







```
{
  "apiVersion": "3.0",
  "data": "56eb07bf-21f6-40b7-af0b-5c6cacfb25e7",
  "responseTime": "2018-11-07T21:32:53.486Z",
  "status": "success"
}
```

k. Save the authentication token in the response as MYTOKEN.

```
export MYTOKEN="56eb07bf-21f6-40b7-af0b-5c6cacfb25e7"
```

You can now use MYTOKEN for other requests, similar to how you would use the API if SSO was not being used.

### Signing out of the API if single sign-on is enabled

If single sign-on (SSO) has been enabled, you must issue a series of API requests to sign out of the Grid Management API or the Tenant Management API.

#### About this task

If required, you can sign out of the StorageGRID API simply by logging out from your organization's single logout page. Or, you can trigger single logout (SLO) from StorageGRID, which requires a valid StorageGRID bearer token.

#### Steps

1. To generate a signed logout request, pass cookie "sso=true" to the SLO API:

```
curl -k -X DELETE "https://$STORAGEGRID_ADDRESS/api/v3/authorize" \
-H "accept: application/json" \
-H "Authorization: Bearer $MYTOKEN" \
--cookie "sso=true" \
| python -m json.tool
```

A logout URL is returned:

```
{
  "apiVersion": "3.0",
  "data":
  "https://ads.example.com/ads/ls/?SAMLRequest=fZDNboMwEIRfhZ...HcQ%3D%3D",
  "responseTime": "2018-11-20T22:20:30.839Z",
  "status": "success"
}
```



## 2. Save the logout URL.

```
export  
LOGOUT_REQUEST='https://adfs.example.com/adfs/ls/?SAMLRequest=fZDNboMwEIRfhZ...HcQ%3D%3D'
```

## 3. Send a request to the logout URL to trigger SLO and to redirect back to StorageGRID.

```
curl --include "$LOGOUT_REQUEST"
```

The 302 response is returned. The redirect location is not applicable to API-only logout.

```
HTTP/1.1 302 Found  
Location: https://$STORAGEGRID_ADDRESS:443/api/saml-  
logout?SAMLResponse=fVLLasMwEPwVo7ss%...%23rsa-sha256  
Set-Cookie: MSISSignoutProtocol=U2FtbA==; expires=Tue, 20 Nov 2018  
22:35:03 GMT; path=/adfs; HttpOnly; Secure
```

## 4. Delete the StorageGRID bearer token.

Deleting the StorageGRID bearer token works the same way as without SSO. If cookie "sso=true" is not provided, the user is logged out of StorageGRID without affecting the SSO state.

```
curl -X DELETE "https://$STORAGEGRID_ADDRESS/api/v3/authorize" \  
-H "accept: application/json" \  
-H "Authorization: Bearer $MYTOKEN" \  
--include
```

A 204 No Content response indicates the user is now signed out.

```
HTTP/1.1 204 No Content
```

## Using StorageGRID security certificates

Security certificates are small data files used to create secure, trusted connections between StorageGRID components and between StorageGRID components and external systems.

StorageGRID uses two types of security certificates:

- **Server certificates** are required when you use HTTPS connections. Server certificates are used to establish secure connections between clients and servers, authenticating the identity of a server to its clients and providing a secure communication path for data. The server and the client each have a copy of



the certificate.

- **Client certificates** authenticate a client or user identity to the server, providing more secure authentication than passwords alone. Client certificates do not encrypt data.

When a client connects to the server using HTTPS, the server responds with the server certificate, which contains a public key. The client verifies this certificate by comparing the server signature to the signature on its copy of the certificate. If the signatures match, the client starts a session with the server using the same public key.

StorageGRID functions as the server for some connections (such as the load balancer endpoint) or as the client for other connections (such as the CloudMirror replication service).

An external certificate authority (CA) can issue custom certificates that are fully compliant with your organization's information security policies. StorageGRID also includes a built-in certificate authority (CA) that generates internal CA certificates during system installation. These internal CA certificates are used, by default, to secure internal StorageGRID traffic. Although you can use the internal CA certificates for a non-production environment, the best practice for a production environment is to use custom certificates signed by an external certificate authority. Unsecured connections with no certificate are also supported but are not recommended.

- Custom CA certificates do not remove the internal certificates; however, the custom certificates should be the ones specified for verifying server connections.
- All custom certificates must meet the system hardening guidelines for server certificates.

### System hardening

- StorageGRID supports bundling of certificates from a CA into a single file (known as a CA certificate bundle).



StorageGRID also includes operating system CA certificates that are the same on all grids. In production environments, make sure that you specify a custom certificate signed by an external certificate authority in place of the operating system CA certificate.

Variants of the server and client certificate types are implemented in several ways. You should have all the certificates needed for your specific StorageGRID configuration ready before you configure the system.



Certificate	Certificate type	Description	Navigation location	Details
Administrator client certificate	Client	<p>Installed on each client, allowing StorageGRID to authenticate external client access.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allows authorized external clients to access the StorageGRID Prometheus database.</li> <li>• Allows secure monitoring of StorageGRID using external tools.</li> </ul>	<b>Configuration &gt; Access Control &gt; Client Certificates</b>	<a href="#">Configuring administrator client certificates</a>
Identity federation certificate	Server	Authenticates the connection between StorageGRID and an external Active Directory, OpenLDAP, or Oracle Directory Server. Used for identity federation, which allows admin groups and users to be managed by an external system.	<b>Configuration &gt; Access Control &gt; Identity Federation</b>	<a href="#">Using identity federation</a>
Single sign-on (SSO) certificate	Server	Authenticates the connection between Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) and StorageGRID that is used for single sign-on (SSO) requests.	<b>Configuration &gt; Access Control &gt; Single Sign-on</b>	<a href="#">Configuring single sign-on</a>



Certificate	Certificate type	Description	Navigation location	Details
Key management server (KMS) certificate	Server and client	Authenticates the connection between StorageGRID and an external key management server (KMS), which provides encryption keys to StorageGRID appliance nodes.	<b>Configuration &gt; System Settings &gt; Key Management Server</b>	<a href="#">Adding a key management server (KMS)</a>
Email alert notification certificate	Server and client	<p>Authenticates the connection between an SMTP email server and StorageGRID that is used for alert notifications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If communications with the SMTP server requires Transport Layer Security (TLS), you must specify the email server CA certificate.</li> <li>• Specify a client certificate only if the SMTP email server requires client certificates for authentication.</li> </ul>	<b>Alerts &gt; Email Setup</b>	<a href="#">Monitor &amp; troubleshoot</a>



Certificate	Certificate type	Description	Navigation location	Details
Load balancer endpoint certificate	Server	<p>Authenticates the connection between S3 or Swift clients and the StorageGRID Load Balancer service on Gateway Nodes or Admin Nodes. You upload or generate a load balancer certificate when you configure a load balancer endpoint. Client applications use the load balancer certificate when connecting to StorageGRID to save and retrieve object data.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The load balancer certificate is the most used certificate during normal StorageGRID operation.</p>	<b>Configuration &gt; Network Settings &gt; Load Balancer Endpoints</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Configuring load balancer endpoints</a></li> <li>• Creating a load balancer endpoint for FabricPool</li> </ul> <p><a href="#">Configure StorageGRID for FabricPool</a></p>



Certificate	Certificate type	Description	Navigation location	Details
Management Interface Server Certificate	Server	<p>Authenticates the connection between client web browsers and the StorageGRID management interface, allowing users to access the Grid Manager and Tenant Manager without security warnings.</p> <p>This certificate also authenticates Grid Management API and Tenant Management API connections.</p> <p>You can use the internal CA certificate or upload a custom certificate.</p>	<b>Configuration &gt; Network Settings &gt; Server Certificates</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Configuring server certificates</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Configuring a custom server certificate for the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager</a></li> </ul>
Cloud Storage Pool endpoint certificate	Server	Authenticates the connection from the StorageGRID Cloud Storage Pool to an external storage location (such as S3 Glacier or Microsoft Azure Blob storage). A different certificate is required for each cloud provider type.	<b>ILM &gt; Storage Pools</b>	<a href="#">Manage objects with ILM</a>
Platform services endpoint certificate	Server	Authenticates the connection from the StorageGRID platform service to an S3 storage resource.	<b>Tenant Manager &gt; STORAGE (S3) &gt; Platform services endpoints</b>	<a href="#">Use a tenant account</a>



Certificate	Certificate type	Description	Navigation location	Details
Object Storage API Service Endpoint Server Certificate	Server	Authenticates secure S3 or Swift client connections to the Local Distribution Router (LDR) service on a Storage Node or to the deprecated Connection Load Balancer (CLB) service on a Gateway Node.	<b>Configuration &gt; Network Settings &gt; Load Balancer Endpoints</b>	<a href="#">Configuring a custom server certificate for connections to the Storage Node or the CLB service</a>

### Example 1: Load Balancer service

In this example, StorageGRID acts as the server.

1. You configure a load balancer endpoint and upload or generate a server certificate in StorageGRID.
2. You configure an S3 or Swift client connection to the load balancer endpoint and upload the same certificate to the client.
3. When the client wants to save or retrieve data, it connects to the load balancer endpoint using HTTPS.
4. StorageGRID responds with the server certificate, which contains a public key, and with a signature based on the private key.
5. The client verifies this certificate by comparing the server signature to the signature on its copy of the certificate. If the signatures match, the client starts a session using the same public key.
6. The client sends object data to StorageGRID.

### Example 2: External key management server (KMS)

In this example, StorageGRID acts as the client.

1. Using external Key Management Server software, you configure StorageGRID as a KMS client and obtain a CA-signed server certificate, a public client certificate, and the private key for the client certificate.
2. Using the Grid Manager, you configure a KMS server and upload the server and client certificates and the client private key.
3. When a StorageGRID node needs an encryption key, it makes a request to the KMS server that includes data from the certificate and a signature based on the private key.
4. The KMS server validates the certificate signature and decides that it can trust StorageGRID.
5. The KMS server responds using the validated connection.

## Controlling administrator access to StorageGRID

You can control administrator access to the StorageGRID system by opening or closing firewall ports, managing admin groups and users, configuring single sign-on (SSO), and providing client certificates to allow secure external access to StorageGRID metrics.



- [Controlling access through firewalls](#)
- [Using identity federation](#)
- [Managing admin groups](#)
- [Managing local users](#)
- [Using single sign-on \(SSO\) for StorageGRID](#)
- [Configuring administrator client certificates](#)

## Controlling access through firewalls

When you want to control access through firewalls, you open or close specific ports at the external firewall.

### Controlling access at the external firewall

You can control access to the user interfaces and APIs on StorageGRID Admin Nodes by opening or closing specific ports at the external firewall. For example, you might want to prevent tenants from being able to connect to the Grid Manager at the firewall, in addition to using other methods to control system access.

Port	Description	If port is open...
443	Default HTTPS port for Admin Nodes	<p>Web browsers and management API clients can access the Grid Manager, the Grid Management API, the Tenant Manager, and the Tenant Management API.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Port 443 is also used for some internal traffic.</p>
8443	Restricted Grid Manager port on Admin Nodes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Web browsers and management API clients can access the Grid Manager and the Grid Management API using HTTPS.</li> <li>• Web browsers and management API clients cannot access the Tenant Manager or the Tenant Management API.</li> <li>• Requests for internal content will be rejected.</li> </ul>
9443	Restricted Tenant Manager port on Admin Nodes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Web browsers and management API clients can access the Tenant Manager and the Tenant Management API using HTTPS.</li> <li>• Web browsers and management API clients cannot access the Grid Manager or the Grid Management API.</li> <li>• Requests for internal content will be rejected.</li> </ul>



Single sign-on (SSO) is not available on the restricted Grid Manager or Tenant Manager ports. You must use the default HTTPS port (443) if you want users to authenticate with single sign-on.

### Related information



[Signing in to the Grid Manager](#)

[Creating a tenant account if StorageGRID is not using SSO](#)

[Summary: IP addresses and ports for client connections](#)

[Managing untrusted Client Networks](#)

[Install Ubuntu or Debian](#)

[Install VMware](#)

[Install Red Hat Enterprise Linux or CentOS](#)

## Using identity federation

Using identity federation makes setting up groups and users faster, and it allows users to sign in to StorageGRID using familiar credentials.

### Configuring identity federation

You can configure identity federation if you want admin groups and users to be managed in another system such as Active Directory, OpenLDAP, or Oracle Directory Server.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- If you plan to enable single sign-on (SSO), you must use Active Directory as the federated identity source and AD FS as the identity provider. See “Requirements for using single sign-on.”
- You must be using Active Directory, OpenLDAP, or Oracle Directory Server as the identity provider.



If you want to use an LDAP v3 service that is not listed, you must contact technical support.

- If you plan to use Transport Layer Security (TLS) for communications with the LDAP server, the identity provider must be using TLS 1.2 or 1.3.

#### About this task

You must configure an identity source for the Grid Manager if you want to import the following types of federated groups:

- Administration groups. The users in admin groups can sign in to the Grid Manager and perform tasks, based on the management permissions assigned to the group.
- Tenant user groups for tenants that do not use their own identity source. Users in tenant groups can sign in to the Tenant Manager and perform tasks, based on the permissions assigned to the group in the Tenant Manager.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Identity Federation**.
2. Select **Enable identity federation**.

The fields for configuring the LDAP server appear.



3. In the LDAP service type section, select the type of LDAP service you want to configure.

You can select **Active Directory**, **OpenLDAP**, or **Other**.



If you select **OpenLDAP**, you must configure the OpenLDAP server. See the guidelines for configuring an OpenLDAP server.



Select **Other** to configure values for an LDAP server that uses Oracle Directory Server.

4. If you selected **Other**, complete the fields in the LDAP Attributes section.

- **User Unique Name:** The name of the attribute that contains the unique identifier of an LDAP user. This attribute is equivalent to `sAMAccountName` for Active Directory and `uid` for OpenLDAP. If you are configuring Oracle Directory Server, enter `uid`.
- **User UUID:** The name of the attribute that contains the permanent unique identifier of an LDAP user. This attribute is equivalent to `objectGUID` for Active Directory and `entryUUID` for OpenLDAP. If you are configuring Oracle Directory Server, enter `nsuniqueid`. Each user's value for the specified attribute must be a 32-digit hexadecimal number in either 16-byte or string format, where hyphens are ignored.
- **Group unique name:** The name of the attribute that contains the unique identifier of an LDAP group. This attribute is equivalent to `sAMAccountName` for Active Directory and `cn` for OpenLDAP. If you are configuring Oracle Directory Server, enter `cn`.
- **Group UUID:** The name of the attribute that contains the permanent unique identifier of an LDAP group. This attribute is equivalent to `objectGUID` for Active Directory and `entryUUID` for OpenLDAP. If you are configuring Oracle Directory Server, enter `nsuniqueid`. Each group's value for the specified attribute must be a 32-digit hexadecimal number in either 16-byte or string format, where hyphens are ignored.

5. In the Configure LDAP server section, enter the required LDAP server and network connection information.

- **Hostname:** The server hostname or IP address of the LDAP server.
- **Port:** The port used to connect to the LDAP server.



The default port for STARTTLS is 389, and the default port for LDAPS is 636. However, you can use any port as long as your firewall is configured correctly.

- **Username:** The full path of the distinguished name (DN) for the user that will connect to the LDAP server.



For Active Directory, you can also specify the Down-Level Logon Name or the User Principal Name.

The specified user must have permission to list groups and users and to access the following attributes:

- `sAMAccountName` or `uid`
- `objectGUID`, `entryUUID`, or `nsuniqueid`
- `cn`
- `memberOf` or `isMemberOf`



- **Password:** The password associated with the username.
- **Group base DN:** The full path of the distinguished name (DN) for an LDAP subtree you want to search for groups. In the Active Directory example (below), all groups whose Distinguished Name is relative to the base DN (DC=storagegrid,DC=example,DC=com) can be used as federated groups.



The **Group unique name** values must be unique within the **Group base DN** they belong to.

- **User base DN:** The full path of the distinguished name (DN) of an LDAP subtree you want to search for users.



The **User unique name** values must be unique within the **User base DN** they belong to.

6. In the **Transport Layer Security (TLS)** section, select a security setting.

- **Use STARTTLS (recommended):** Use STARTTLS to secure communications with the LDAP server. This is the recommended option.
- **Use LDAPS:** The LDAPS (LDAP over SSL) option uses TLS to establish a connection to the LDAP server. This option is supported for compatibility reasons.
- **Do not use TLS:** The network traffic between the StorageGRID system and the LDAP server will not be secured.



Using the **Do not use TLS** option is not supported if your Active Directory server enforces LDAP signing. You must use STARTTLS or LDAPS.

7. If you selected STARTTLS or LDAPS, choose the certificate used to secure the connection.

- **Use operating system CA certificate:** Use the default CA certificate installed on the operating system to secure connections.
- **Use custom CA certificate:** Use a custom security certificate.

If you select this setting, copy and paste the custom security certificate into the CA certificate text box.

8. Optionally, select **Test connection** to validate your connection settings for the LDAP server.

A confirmation message appears in the upper right corner of the page if the connection is valid.

9. If the connection is valid, select **Save**.

The following screenshot shows example configuration values for an LDAP server that uses Active Directory.



## LDAP service type

Select the type of LDAP service you want to configure.

Active Directory

OpenLDAP

Other

## Configure LDAP server (All fields are required)

Hostname

my-active-directory.example.com

Port

389

Username

MyDomain\Administrator

Password

••••••••

Group Base DN

DC=storagegrid,DC=example,DC=com

User Base DN

DC=storagegrid,DC=example,DC=com

### Related information

[Supported ciphers for outgoing TLS connections](#)

[Requirements for using single sign-on](#)

[Creating a tenant account](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

### Guidelines for configuring an OpenLDAP server

If you want to use an OpenLDAP server for identity federation, you must configure specific settings on the OpenLDAP server.



## Memberof and refint overlays

The memberof and refint overlays should be enabled. For more information, see the instructions for reverse group membership maintenance in the Administrator's Guide for OpenLDAP.

## Indexing

You must configure the following OpenLDAP attributes with the specified index keywords:

- `olcDbIndex: objectClass eq`
- `olcDbIndex: uid eq,pres,sub`
- `olcDbIndex: cn eq,pres,sub`
- `olcDbIndex: entryUUID eq`

In addition, ensure the fields mentioned in the help for Username are indexed for optimal performance.

See the information about reverse group membership maintenance in the Administrator's Guide for OpenLDAP.

## Related information

[OpenLDAP documentation: Version 2.4 Administrator's Guide](#)

## Forcing synchronization with the identity source

The StorageGRID system periodically synchronizes federated groups and users from the identity source. You can force synchronization to start if you want to enable or restrict user permissions as quickly as possible.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- The identity source must be enabled.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Identity Federation**.

The Identity Federation page appears. The **Synchronize** button is at the bottom of the page.

#### Synchronize

StorageGRID periodically synchronizes federated groups and users from the configured LDAP server. Clicking the button below will immediately start the synchronization process against the saved LDAP server.

Synchronize

2. Click **Synchronize**.

A confirmation message indicates that synchronization started successfully. The synchronization process might take some time depending on your environment.



The **Identity federation synchronization failure** alert is triggered if there is an issue synchronizing federated groups and users from the identity source.



## Disabling identity federation

You can temporarily or permanently disable identity federation for groups and users. When identity federation is disabled, there is no communication between StorageGRID and the identity source. However, any settings you have configured are retained, allowing you to easily reenable identity federation in the future.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

Before you disable identity federation, you should be aware of the following:

- Federated users will be unable to sign in.
- Federated users who are currently signed in will retain access to the StorageGRID system until their session expires, but they will be unable to sign in after their session expires.
- Synchronization between the StorageGRID system and the identity source will not occur, and alerts or alarms will not be raised for accounts that have not been synchronized.
- The **Enable Identity Federation** check box is disabled if single sign-on (SSO) is set to **Enabled** or **Sandbox Mode**. The SSO Status on the Single Sign-on page must be **Disabled** before you can disable identity federation.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Identity Federation**.
2. Uncheck the **Enable Identity Federation** check box.
3. Click **Save**.

### Related information

[Disabling single sign-on](#)

## Managing admin groups

You can create admin groups to manage the security permissions for one or more admin users. Users must belong to a group to be granted access to the StorageGRID system.

### Creating admin groups

Admin groups allow you to determine which users can access which features and operations in the Grid Manager and the Grid Management API.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- If you plan to import a federated group, you must have configured identity federation and the federated group must already exist in the configured identity source.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Groups**.



The Admin Groups page appears and lists any existing admin groups.

## Admin Groups

Add and manage local and federated user groups, allowing member users to sign in to the Grid Manager. Set group permissions to control access to specific pages and features.

<div><div>+ Add</div><div> Clone</div><div> Edit</div><div> Remove</div></div>				
	Name	ID	Group Type ?	Access Mode ?
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Flintstone	264083d0-23b5-3046-9bd4-88b7097731ab	Federated	Read-write
<input type="radio"/>	Simpson	cc8ad11f-68d0-f84a-af29-e7a6fcdc63a2	Federated	Read-only
<input type="radio"/>	ILM (read-only group)	88446141-9599-4543-b183-9c227ce7767a	Local	Read-only
<input type="radio"/>	API Developers	974b2faa-f9a1-4cfc-b364-914cdba2905f	Local	Read-write
<input type="radio"/>	ILM Admins (read-write)	a528c0c2-2417-4559-86ed-f0d2e31da820	Local	Read-write
<input type="radio"/>	Maintenance Users	7e3400ec-de8c-45a7-8bb8-e1496b362a8d	Local	Read-write
<div>Group Type <div>All</div> Show <div>20</div> rows per page <div> </div></div>				


2. Select **Add**.

The Add Group dialog box appears.




## Add Group

Create a new local group or import a group from the external identity source.

Group Type  ☒ Local ☐ Federated

Display Name


Unique Name 

Access Mode  ☒ Read-write ☐ Read-only


### Management Permissions


☐ Root Access 


☐ Acknowledge Alarms 

☐ Other Grid Configuration 

☐ Change Tenant Root Password 

☐ Metrics Query 

☐ Object Metadata Lookup 

☐ Manage Alerts 

☐ Grid Topology Page Configuration 

☐ Tenant Accounts 

☐ Maintenance 

☐ ILM 

☐ Storage Appliance Administrator 

Cancel

Save

- For Group Type, select **Local** if you want to create a group that will be used only within StorageGRID, or select **Federated** if you want to import a group from the identity source.
- If you selected **Local**, enter a display name for the group. The display name is the name that appears in the Grid Manager. For example, "Maintenance Users" or "ILM Administrators."
- Enter a unique name for the group.
  - Local**: Enter whatever unique name you want. For example, "ILM Administrators."
  - Federated**: Enter the group's name exactly as it appears in the configured identity source.
- For **Access Mode**, select whether users in the group can change settings and perform operations in the Grid Manager and the Grid Management API or whether they can only view settings and features.
  - Read-write** (default): Users can change settings and perform the operations allowed by their management permissions.
  - Read-only**: Users can only view settings and features. They cannot make any changes or perform any operations in the Grid Manager or Grid Management API. Local read-only users can change their own passwords.



If a user belongs to multiple groups and any group is set to **Read-only**, the user will have read-only access to all selected settings and features.

- Select one or more management permissions.



You must assign at least one permission to each group; otherwise, users belonging to the group will not be able to sign in to StorageGRID.

8. Select **Save**.

The new group is created. If this is a local group, you can now add one or more users. If this is a federated group, the identity source manages which users belong to the group.

## Related information

[Managing local users](#)

## Admin group permissions

When creating admin user groups, you select one or more permissions to control access to specific features of the Grid Manager. You can then assign each user to one or more of these admin groups to determine which tasks that user can perform.

You must assign at least one permission to each group; otherwise, users belonging to that group will not be able to sign in to the Grid Manager.

By default, any user who belongs to a group that has at least one permission can perform the following tasks:

- Sign in to the Grid Manager
- View the Dashboard
- View the Nodes pages
- Monitor grid topology
- View current and resolved alerts
- View current and historical alarms (legacy system)
- Change their own password (local users only)
- View certain information on the Configuration and Maintenance pages

The following sections describe the permissions you can assign when creating or editing an admin group. Any functionality not explicitly mentioned requires the Root Access permission.

### Root Access

This permission provides access to all grid administration features.

### Manage Alerts

This permission provides access to options for managing alerts. Users must have this permission to manage silences, alert notifications, and alert rules.

### Acknowledge Alarms (legacy system)

This permission provides access to acknowledge and respond to alarms (legacy system). All signed-in users can view current and historical alarms.

If you want a user to monitor grid topology and acknowledge alarms only, you should assign this permission.



## Grid Topology Page Configuration

This permission provides access to the following menu options:

- Configuration tabs available from the pages in **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
- **Reset event counts** link on the **Nodes > Events** tab.

## Other Grid Configuration

This permission provides access to additional grid configuration options.



To see these additional options, users must also have the Grid Topology Page Configuration permission.

- **Alarms** (legacy system):
  - Global Alarms
  - Legacy Email Setup
- **ILM**:
  - Storage Pools
  - Storage Grades
- **Configuration > Network Settings**
  - Link Cost
- **Configuration > System Settings**:
  - Display Options
  - Grid Options
  - Storage Options
- **Configuration > Monitoring**:
  - Events
- **Support**:
  - AutoSupport

## Tenant Accounts

This permission provides access to the **Tenants > Tenant Accounts** page.



Version 1 of the Grid Management API (which has been deprecated) uses this permission to manage tenant group policies, reset Swift admin passwords, and manage root user S3 access keys.

## Change Tenant Root Password

This permission provides access to the **Change Root Password** option on the Tenant Accounts page, allowing you to control who can change the password for the tenant's local root user. Users who do not have this permission cannot see the **Change Root Password** option.





You must assign the Tenant Accounts permission to the group before you can assign this permission.

## Maintenance

This permission provides access to the following menu options:

- **Configuration > System Settings:**
    - Domain Names\*
    - Server Certificates\*
  - **Configuration > Monitoring:**
    - Audit\*
  - **Configuration > Access Control:**
    - Grid Passwords
  - **Maintenance > Maintenance Tasks**
    - Decommission
    - Expansion
    - Recovery
  - **Maintenance > Network:**
    - DNS Servers\*
    - Grid Network\*
    - NTP Servers\*
  - **Maintenance > System:**
    - License\*
    - Recovery Package
    - Software Update
  - **Support > Tools:**
    - Logs
- Users who do not have the Maintenance permission can view, but not edit, the pages marked with an asterisk.

## Metrics Query

This permission provides access to the **Support > Tools > Metrics** page. This permission also provides access to custom Prometheus metrics queries using the **Metrics** section of the Grid Management API.

## ILM

This permission provides access to the following **ILM** menu options:

- **Erasure Coding**
- **Rules**
- **Policies**



- **Regions**



Access to the **ILM > Storage Pools** and **ILM > Storage Grades** menu options is controlled by the Other Grid Configuration and Grid Topology Page Configuration permissions.

#### **Object Metadata Lookup**

This permission provides access to the **ILM > Object Metadata Lookup** menu option.

#### **Storage Appliance Administrator**

This permission provides access to the E-Series SANtricity System Manager on storage appliances through the Grid Manager.

#### **Interaction between permissions and Access Mode**

For all permissions, the group's Access Mode setting determines whether users can change settings and perform operations or whether they can only view the related settings and features. If a user belongs to multiple groups and any group is set to **Read-only**, the user will have read-only access to all selected settings and features.

#### **Deactivating features from the Grid Management API**

You can use the Grid Management API to completely deactivate certain features in the StorageGRID system. When a feature is deactivated, no one can be assigned permissions to perform the tasks related to that feature.

#### **About this task**

The Deactivated Features system allows you to prevent access to certain features in the StorageGRID system. Deactivating a feature is the only way to prevent the root user or users who belong to admin groups with the Root Access permission from being able to use that feature.

To understand how this functionality might be useful, consider the following scenario:

*Company A is a service provider who leases the storage capacity of their StorageGRID system by creating tenant accounts. To protect the security of their leaseholders' objects, Company A wants to ensure that its own employees can never access any tenant account after the account has been deployed.*

*Company A can accomplish this goal by using the Deactivate Features system in the Grid Management API. By completely deactivating the **Change Tenant Root Password** feature in the Grid Manager (both the UI and the API), Company A can ensure that no Admin user—including the root user and users belonging to groups with the Root Access permission—can change the password for any tenant account's root user.*

#### **Reactivating deactivated features**

By default, you can use the Grid Management API to reactivate a feature that has been deactivated. However, if you want to prevent deactivated features from ever being reactivated, you can deactivate the **activateFeatures** feature itself.



The **activateFeatures** feature cannot be reactivated. If you decide to deactivate this feature, be aware that you will permanently lose the ability to reactivate any other deactivated features. You must contact technical support to restore any lost functionality.

For details, see the instructions for implementing S3 or Swift client applications.



## Steps

1. Access the Swagger documentation for the Grid Management API.
2. Locate the Deactivate Features endpoint.
3. To deactivate a feature, such as **Change Tenant Root Password**, send a body to the API like this:

```
{ "grid": {"changeTenantRootPassword": true} }
```

When the request is complete, the Change Tenant Root Password feature is disabled. The Change Tenant Root Password management permission no longer appears in the user interface, and any API request that attempts to change the root password for a tenant will fail with “403 Forbidden.”

4. To reactivate all features, send a body to the API like this:

```
{ "grid": null }
```

When this request is complete, all features, including the Change Tenant Root Password feature, are reactivated. The Change Tenant Root Password management permission now appears in the user interface, and any API request that attempts to change the root password for a tenant will succeed, assuming the user has the Root Access or Change Tenant Root Password management permission.



The previous example causes *all* deactivated features to be reactivated. If other features have been deactivated that should remain deactivated, you must explicitly specify them in the PUT request. For example, to reactivate the Change Tenant Root Password feature and continue to deactivate the Alarm Acknowledgment feature, send this PUT request:

```
{ "grid": { "alarmAcknowledgment": true } }
```

## Related information

[Using the Grid Management API](#)

## Modifying an admin group

You can modify an admin group to change the permissions associated with the group. For local admin groups, you can also update the display name.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Groups**.
2. Select the group.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. You can then use your browser's find feature to search for a specific item in the currently



displayed rows.

3. Click **Edit**.
4. Optionally, for local groups, enter the group's name that will appear to users, for example, "Maintenance Users."

You cannot change the unique name, which is the internal group name.

5. Optionally, change the group's Access Mode.
  - **Read-write** (default): Users can change settings and perform the operations allowed by their management permissions.
  - **Read-only**: Users can only view settings and features. They cannot make any changes or perform any operations in the Grid Manager or Grid Management API. Local read-only users can change their own passwords.



If a user belongs to multiple groups and any group is set to **Read-only**, the user will have read-only access to all selected settings and features.

6. Optionally, add or remove group permissions.

See information about admin group permissions.

7. Select **Save**.

## Related information

[Admin group permissions](#)

## Deleting an admin group

You can delete an admin group when you want to remove the group from the system, and remove all permissions associated with the group. Deleting an admin group removes any admin users from the group, but does not delete the admin users.

## What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

## About this task

When you delete a group, users assigned to that group will lose all access privileges to the Grid Manager, unless they are granted privileges by a different group.

## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Groups**.
2. Select the name of the group.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. You can then use your browser's find feature to search for a specific item in the currently displayed rows.

3. Select **Remove**.
4. Select **OK**.



## Managing local users

You can create local users and assign them to local admin groups to determine which Grid Manager features these users can access.

The Grid Manager includes one predefined local user, named “root.” Although you can add and remove local users, you cannot remove the root user.



If single sign-on (SSO) has been enabled, local users cannot sign in to StorageGRID.

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### Creating a local user

If you have created local admin groups, you can create one or more local users and assign each user to one or more groups. The group’s permissions control which Grid Manager features the user can access.

#### About this task

You can only create local users, and you can only assign these users to local admin groups. Federated users and federated groups are managed using the external identity source.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Users**.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Enter the user’s display name, unique name, and password.
4. Assign the user to one or more groups that govern the access permissions.

The list of group names is generated from the Groups table.

5. Click **Save**.

#### Related information

[Managing admin groups](#)

### Modifying a local user’s account

You can modify a local admin user’s account to update the user’s display name or group membership. You can also temporarily prevent a user from accessing the system.

#### About this task

You can edit local users only. Federated user details are automatically synchronized with the external identity source.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Users**.
2. Select the user you want to edit.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. You can then use your browser’s find feature to search for a specific item in the currently



displayed rows.

3. Click **Edit**.
4. Optionally, make changes to the name or group membership.
5. Optionally, to prevent the user from accessing the system temporarily, check **Deny Access**.
6. Click **Save**.

The new settings are applied the next time the user signs out and then signs back in to the Grid Manager.

## Deleting a local user's account

You can delete accounts for local users that no longer require access to the Grid Manager.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Users**.
2. Select the local user you want to delete.



You cannot delete the predefined root local user.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. You can then use your browser's find feature to search for a specific item in the currently displayed rows.

3. Click **Remove**.
4. Click **OK**.

## Changing a local user's password

Local users can change their own passwords using the **Change Password** option in the Grid Manager banner. In addition, users who have access to the Admin Users page can change passwords for other local users.

### About this task

You can change passwords for local users only. Federated users must change their own passwords in the external identity source.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Users**.
2. From the Users page, select the user.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. You can then use your browser's find feature to search for a specific item in the currently displayed rows.

3. Click **Change Password**.
4. Enter and confirm the password, and click **Save**.

## Using single sign-on (SSO) for StorageGRID

The StorageGRID system supports single sign-on (SSO) using the Security Assertion



Markup Language 2.0 (SAML 2.0) standard. When SSO is enabled, all users must be authenticated by an external identity provider before they can access the Grid Manager, the Tenant Manager, the Grid Management API, or the Tenant Management API. Local users cannot sign in to StorageGRID.

- [How single sign-on works](#)
- [Requirements for using single sign-on](#)
- [Configuring single sign-on](#)

### How single sign-on works

Before enabling single sign-on (SSO), review how the StorageGRID sign-in and sign-out processes are affected when SSO is enabled.

#### Signing in when SSO is enabled

When SSO is enabled and you sign in to StorageGRID, you are redirected to your organization's SSO page to validate your credentials.

#### Steps

1. Enter the fully qualified domain name or IP address of any StorageGRID Admin Node in a web browser.

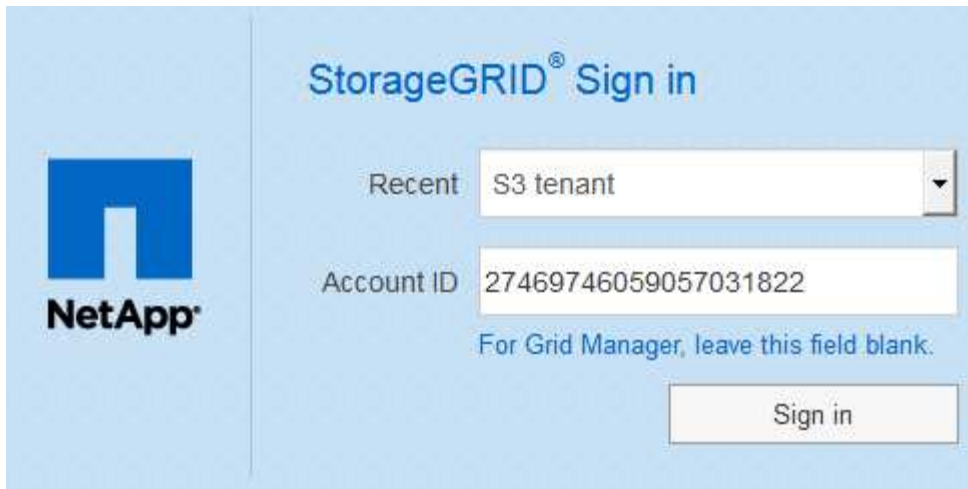
The StorageGRID Sign in page appears.

- If this is the first time you have accessed the URL on this browser, you are prompted for an account ID:

A screenshot of the StorageGRID Sign in page. On the left is the NetApp logo. The main heading is "StorageGRID® Sign in". Below it is a text input field labeled "Account ID" containing a series of zeros. A note below the field says "For Grid Manager, leave this field blank." At the bottom right is a "Sign in" button.

- If you have previously accessed either the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager, you are prompted to select a recent account or to enter an account ID:





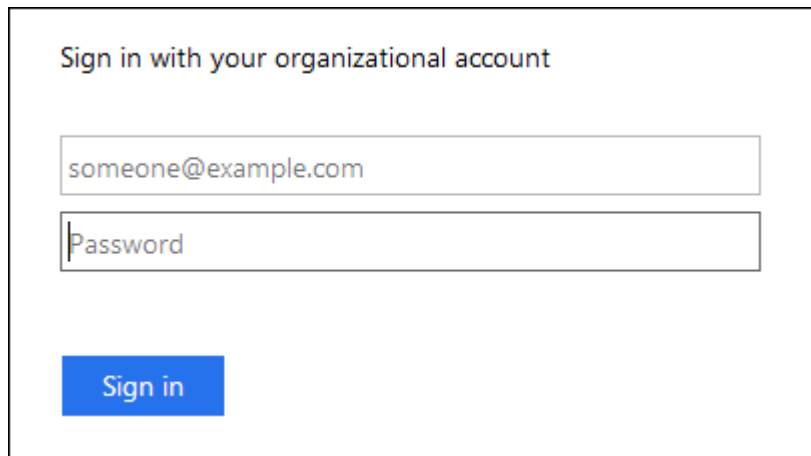
The image shows the StorageGRID Sign in page. On the left is the NetApp logo. The main heading is 'StorageGRID® Sign in'. Below this, there is a 'Recent' dropdown menu showing 'S3 tenant'. Below that is an 'Account ID' field containing the value '27469746059057031822'. A note below the field says 'For Grid Manager, leave this field blank.' At the bottom right is a 'Sign in' button.



The StorageGRID Sign in page is not shown when you enter the complete URL for a tenant account (that is, a fully qualified domain name or IP address followed by `/?accountId=20-digit-account-id`). Instead, you are immediately redirected to your organization's SSO sign-in page, where you can [sign in with your SSO credentials](#).

2. Indicate whether you want to access the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager:
  - To access the Grid Manager, leave the **Account ID** field blank, enter **0** as the account ID, or select **Grid Manager** if it appears in the list of recent accounts.
  - To access the Tenant Manager, enter the 20-digit tenant account ID or select a tenant by name if it appears in the list of recent accounts.
3. Click **Sign in**

StorageGRID redirects you to your organization's SSO sign-in page. For example:



The image shows an example of an SSO sign-in page. The heading is 'Sign in with your organizational account'. Below this are two input fields: the first contains the email address 'someone@example.com' and the second is labeled 'Password'. At the bottom left is a blue 'Sign in' button.

4. Sign in with your SSO credentials.

If your SSO credentials are correct:

- a. The identity provider (IdP) provides an authentication response to StorageGRID.
- b. StorageGRID validates the authentication response.
- c. If the response is valid and you belong to a federated group that has adequate access permission, you are signed in to the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager, depending on which account you selected.



5. Optionally, access other Admin Nodes, or access the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager, if you have adequate permissions.

You do not need to reenter your SSO credentials.

### Signing out when SSO is enabled

When SSO is enabled for StorageGRID, what happens when you sign out depends on what you are signed in to and where you are signing out from.

#### Steps

1. Locate the **Sign Out** link in the top-right corner of the user interface.
2. Click **Sign Out**.

The StorageGRID Sign in page appears. The **Recent Accounts** drop-down is updated to include **Grid Manager** or the name of the tenant, so you can access these user interfaces more quickly in the future.

If you are signed in to...	And you sign out from...	You are signed out of...
Grid Manager on one or more Admin Nodes	Grid Manager on any Admin Node	Grid Manager on all Admin Nodes
Tenant Manager on one or more Admin Nodes	Tenant Manager on any Admin Node	Tenant Manager on all Admin Nodes
Both Grid Manager and Tenant Manager	Grid Manager	The Grid Manager only. You must also sign out of the Tenant Manager to sign out of SSO.
	Tenant Manager	The Tenant Manager only. You must also sign out of the Grid Manager to sign out of SSO.



The table summarizes what happens when you sign out if you are using a single browser session. If you are signed in to StorageGRID across multiple browser sessions, you must sign out of all browser sessions separately.

### Requirements for using single sign-on

Before enabling single sign-on (SSO) for a StorageGRID system, review the requirements in this section.



Single sign-on (SSO) is not available on the restricted Grid Manager or Tenant Manager ports. You must use the default HTTPS port (443) if you want users to authenticate with single sign-on.

### Identity provider requirements

The identity provider (IdP) for SSO must meet the following requirements:



- Either of the following versions of Active Directory Federation Service (AD FS):
  - AD FS 4.0, included with Windows Server 2016



Windows Server 2016 should be using the [KB3201845 update](#), or higher.

- AD FS 3.0, included with Windows Server 2012 R2 update, or higher.
- Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.2 or 1.3
- Microsoft .NET Framework, version 3.5.1 or higher

### Server certificate requirements

StorageGRID uses a Management Interface Server Certificate on each Admin Node to secure access to the Grid Manager, the Tenant Manager, the Grid Management API, and the Tenant Management API. When you configure SSO relying party trusts for StorageGRID in AD FS, you use the server certificate as the signature certificate for StorageGRID requests to AD FS.

If you have not already installed a custom server certificate for the management interface, you should do so now. When you install a custom server certificate, it is used for all Admin Nodes, and you can use it in all StorageGRID relying party trusts.



Using an Admin Node's default server certificate in the AD FS relying party trust is not recommended. If the node fails and you recover it, a new default server certificate is generated. Before you can sign in to the recovered node, you must update the relying party trust in AD FS with the new certificate.

You can access an Admin Node's server certificate by logging in to the command shell of the node and going to the `/var/local/mgmt-api` directory. A custom server certificate is named `custom-server.crt`. The node's default server certificate is named `server.crt`.

### Related information

[Controlling access through firewalls](#)

[Configuring a custom server certificate for the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager](#)

### Configuring single sign-on

When single sign-on (SSO) is enabled, users can only access the Grid Manager, the Tenant Manager, the Grid Management API, or the Tenant Management API if their credentials are authorized using the SSO sign-in process implemented by your organization.

- [Confirming federated users can sign in](#)
- [Using sandbox mode](#)
- [Creating relying party trusts in AD FS](#)
- [Testing relying party trusts](#)
- [Enabling single sign-on](#)
- [Disabling single sign-on](#)
- [Temporarily disabling and reenabling single sign-on for one Admin Node](#)



## Confirming federated users can sign in

Before you enable single sign-on (SSO), you must confirm that at least one federated user can sign in to the Grid Manager and in to the Tenant Manager for any existing tenant accounts.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You are using Active Directory as the federated identity source and AD FS as the identity provider.

### [Requirements for using single sign-on](#)

### Steps

1. If there are existing tenant accounts, confirm that none of the tenants is using its own identity source.



When you enable SSO, an identity source configured in the Tenant Manager is overridden by the identity source configured in the Grid Manager. Users belonging to the tenant's identity source will no longer be able to sign in unless they have an account with the Grid Manager identity source.

- a. Sign in to the Tenant Manager for each tenant account.
  - b. Select **Access Control > Identity Federation**.
  - c. Confirm that the **Enable Identity Federation** check box is not selected.
  - d. If it is, confirm that any federated groups that might be in use for this tenant account are no longer required, unselect the check box, and click **Save**.
2. Confirm that a federated user can access the Grid Manager:
    - a. From Grid Manager, select **Configuration > Access Control > Admin Groups**.
    - b. Ensure that at least one federated group has been imported from the Active Directory identity source and that it has been assigned the Root Access permission.
    - c. Sign out.
    - d. Confirm you can sign back in to the Grid Manager as a user in the federated group.
  3. If there are existing tenant accounts, confirm that a federated user who has Root Access permission can sign in:
    - a. From the Grid Manager, select **Tenants**.
    - b. Select the tenant account, and click **Edit Account**.
    - c. If the **Uses Own Identity Source** check box is selected, uncheck the box and click **Save**.



## Edit Tenant Account

### Tenant Details

Display Name

Uses Own Identity Source ☐

Allow Platform Services ☒

Storage Quota (optional)  GB ▼

Cancel

Save

The Tenant Accounts page appears.

- d. Select the tenant account, click **Sign In**, and sign in to the tenant account as the local root user.
- e. From the Tenant Manager, click **Access Control > Groups**.
- f. Ensure that at least one federated group from the Grid Manager has been assigned the Root Access permission for this tenant.
- g. Sign out.
- h. Confirm you can sign back in to the tenant as a user in the federated group.

### Related information

[Requirements for using single sign-on](#)

[Managing admin groups](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

### Using sandbox mode

You can use sandbox mode to configure and test Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) relying party trusts before you enforce single sign-on (SSO) for StorageGRID users. After SSO is enabled, you can reenabling sandbox mode to configure or test new and existing relying party trusts. Reenabling sandbox mode temporarily disables SSO for StorageGRID users.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

When SSO is enabled and a user attempts to sign in to an Admin Node, StorageGRID sends an authentication request to AD FS. In turn, AD FS sends an authentication response back to StorageGRID, indicating whether the authorization request was successful. For successful requests, the response includes a universally unique identifier (UUID) for the user.



To allow StorageGRID (the service provider) and AD FS (the identity provider) to communicate securely about user authentication requests, you must configure certain settings in StorageGRID. Next, you must use AD FS to create a relying party trust for every Admin Node. Finally, you must return to StorageGRID to enable SSO.

Sandbox mode makes it easy to perform this back-and-forth configuration and to test all of your settings before you enable SSO.



Using sandbox mode is highly recommended, but not strictly required. If you are prepared to create AD FS relying party trusts immediately after you configure SSO in StorageGRID, and you do not need to test the SSO and single logout (SLO) processes for each Admin Node, click **Enabled**, enter the StorageGRID settings, create a relying party trust for each Admin Node in AD FS, and then click **Save** to enable SSO.

## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Single Sign-on**.

The Single Sign-on page appears, with the **Disabled** option selected.

### Single Sign-on

You can enable single sign-on (SSO) if you want an external identity provider (IdP) to authorize all user access to StorageGRID. To start, enable [identity federation](#) and confirm that at least one federated user has Root Access permission to the Grid Manager and to the Tenant Manager for any existing tenant accounts. Next, select Sandbox Mode to configure, save, and then test your SSO settings. After verifying the connections, select Enabled and click Save to start using SSO.

SSO Status   ☒ Disabled   ☐ Sandbox Mode   ☐ Enabled

Save



If the SSO Status options do not appear, confirm you have configured Active Directory as the federated identity source. See “Requirements for using single sign-on.”

2. Select the **Sandbox Mode** option.

The Identity Provider and Relying Party settings appear. In the Identity Provider section, the **Service Type** field is read only. It shows the type of identity federation service you are using (for example, Active Directory).

3. In the Identity Provider section:

- a. Enter the Federation Service name, exactly as it appears in AD FS.



To locate the Federation Service Name, go to Windows Server Manager. Select **Tools > AD FS Management**. From the Action menu, select **Edit Federation Service Properties**. The Federation Service Name is shown in the second field.

- b. Specify whether you want to use Transport Layer Security (TLS) to secure the connection when the identity provider sends SSO configuration information in response to StorageGRID requests.

- **Use operating system CA certificate:** Use the default CA certificate installed on the operating system to secure the connection.
- **Use custom CA certificate:** Use a custom CA certificate to secure the connection.

If you select this setting, copy and paste the certificate in the **CA Certificate** text box.



- **Do not use TLS:** Do not use a TLS certificate to secure the connection.

4. In the Relying Party section, specify the relying party identifier you will use for StorageGRID Admin Nodes when you configure relying party trusts.

- For example, if your grid has only one Admin Node and you do not anticipate adding more Admin Nodes in the future, enter `SG` or `StorageGRID`.
- If your grid includes more than one Admin Node, include the string `[HOSTNAME]` in the identifier. For example, `SG-[HOSTNAME]`. This generates a table that includes a relying party identifier for each Admin Node, based on the node's hostname.

NOTE: You must create a relying party trust for each Admin Node in your StorageGRID system. Having a relying party trust for each Admin Node ensures that users can securely sign in to and out of any Admin Node.

5. Click **Save**.

- A green check mark appears on the **Save** button for a few seconds.



- The Sandbox mode confirmation notice appears, confirming that sandbox mode is now enabled. You can use this mode while you use AD FS to configure a relying party trust for each Admin Node and test the single sign-in (SSO) and single logout (SLO) processes.

### Single Sign-on

You can enable single sign-on (SSO) if you want an external identity provider (IdP) to authorize all user access to StorageGRID. To start, enable [identity federation](#) and confirm that at least one federated user has Root Access permission to the Grid Manager and to the Tenant Manager for any existing tenant accounts. Next, select Sandbox Mode to configure, save, and then test your SSO settings. After verifying the connections, select Enabled and click Save to start using SSO.

SSO Status   ☐ Disabled   ☒ Sandbox Mode   ☐ Enabled

#### Sandbox mode

Sandbox mode is currently enabled. Use this mode to configure relying party trusts and to confirm that single sign-on (SSO) and single logout (SLO) are correctly configured for the StorageGRID system.

1. Use Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) to create relying party trusts for StorageGRID. Create one trust for each Admin Node, using the relying party identifier(s) shown below.
2. Go to your identity provider's sign-on page: <https://ad2016.saml.sgws/adfs/ls/idpinitiatedsignon.htm>
3. From this page, sign in to each StorageGRID relying party trust. If the SSO operation is successful, StorageGRID displays a page with a success message. Otherwise, an error message is displayed.

When you have confirmed SSO for each of the relying party trusts and you are ready to enforce the use of SSO for StorageGRID, change the SSO Status to Enabled, and click Save.

### Related information

[Requirements for using single sign-on](#)

### Creating relying party trusts in AD FS

You must use Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) to create a relying party trust



for each Admin Node in your system. You can create relying party trusts using PowerShell commands, by importing SAML metadata from StorageGRID, or by entering the data manually.

### Creating a relying party trust using Windows PowerShell

You can use Windows PowerShell to quickly create one or more relying party trusts.

#### What you'll need

- You have configured SSO in StorageGRID, and you know the fully qualified domain name (or the IP address) and the relying party identifier for each Admin Node in your system.



You must create a relying party trust for each Admin Node in your StorageGRID system. Having a relying party trust for each Admin Node ensures that users can securely sign in to and out of any Admin Node.

- You have experience creating relying party trusts in AD FS, or you have access to the Microsoft AD FS documentation.
- You are using the AD FS Management snap-in, and you belong to the Administrators group.

#### About this task

These instructions apply to AD FS 4.0, which is included with Windows Server 2016. If you are using AD FS 3.0, which is included with Windows 2012 R2, you will notice slight differences in the procedure. See the Microsoft AD FS documentation if you have questions.

#### Steps

1. From the Windows start menu, right-click the PowerShell icon, and select **Run as Administrator**.
2. At the PowerShell command prompt, enter the following command:

```
Add-AdfsRelyingPartyTrust -Name "Admin_Node_Identifier" -MetadataURL  
"https://Admin_Node_FQDN/api/saml-metadata"
```

- For *Admin\_Node\_Identifier*, enter the Relying Party Identifier for the Admin Node, exactly as it appears on the Single Sign-on page. For example, SG-DC1-ADM1.
- For *Admin\_Node\_FQDN*, enter the fully qualified domain name for the same Admin Node. (If necessary, you can use the node's IP address instead. However, if you enter an IP address here, be aware that you must update or recreate this relying party trust if that IP address ever changes.)

3. From Windows Server Manager, select **Tools > AD FS Management**.

The AD FS management tool appears.

4. Select **AD FS > Relying Party Trusts**.

The list of relying party trusts appears.

5. Add an Access Control Policy to the newly created relying party trust:
  - a. Locate the relying party trust you just created.
  - b. Right-click the trust, and select **Edit Access Control Policy**.
  - c. Select an Access Control Policy.



- d. Click **Apply**, and click **OK**
6. Add a Claim Issuance Policy to the newly created Relying Party Trust:
  - a. Locate the relying party trust you just created.
  - b. Right-click the trust, and select **Edit claim issuance policy**.
  - c. Click **Add rule**.
  - d. On the Select Rule Template page, select **Send LDAP Attributes as Claims** from the list, and click **Next**.
  - e. On the Configure Rule page, enter a display name for this rule.

For example, **ObjectGUID to Name ID**.

- f. For the Attribute Store, select **Active Directory**.
- g. In the LDAP Attribute column of the Mapping table, type **objectGUID**.
- h. In the Outgoing Claim Type column of the Mapping table, select **Name ID** from the drop-down list.
- i. Click **Finish**, and click **OK**.
7. Confirm that the metadata was imported successfully.
  - a. Right-click the relying party trust to open its properties.
  - b. Confirm that the fields on the **Endpoints**, **Identifiers**, and **Signature** tabs are populated.

If the metadata is missing, confirm that the Federation metadata address is correct, or simply enter the values manually.

8. Repeat these steps to configure a relying party trust for all of the Admin Nodes in your StorageGRID system.
9. When you are done, return to StorageGRID and [test all relying party trusts](#) to confirm they are configured correctly.

## Creating a relying party trust by importing federation metadata

You can import the values for each relying party trust by accessing the SAML metadata for each Admin Node.

### What you'll need

- You have configured SSO in StorageGRID, and you know the fully qualified domain name (or the IP address) and the relying party identifier for each Admin Node in your system.



You must create a relying party trust for each Admin Node in your StorageGRID system. Having a relying party trust for each Admin Node ensures that users can securely sign in to and out of any Admin Node.

- You have experience creating relying party trusts in AD FS, or you have access to the Microsoft AD FS documentation.
- You are using the AD FS Management snap-in, and you belong to the Administrators group.

### About this task

These instructions apply to AD FS 4.0, which is included with Windows Server 2016. If you are using AD FS 3.0, which is included with Windows 2012 R2, you will notice slight differences in the procedure. See the Microsoft AD FS documentation if you have questions.



## Steps

1. In Windows Server Manager, click **Tools**, and then select **AD FS Management**.
2. Under Actions, click **Add Relying Party Trust**.
3. On the Welcome page, choose **Claims aware**, and click **Start**.
4. Select **Import data about the relying party published online or on a local network**.
5. In **Federation metadata address (host name or URL)**, type the location of the SAML metadata for this Admin Node:

`https://Admin_Node_FQDN/api/saml-metadata`

For *Admin\_Node\_FQDN*, enter the fully qualified domain name for the same Admin Node. (If necessary, you can use the node's IP address instead. However, if you enter an IP address here, be aware that you must update or recreate this relying party trust if that IP address ever changes.)

6. Complete the Relying Party Trust wizard, save the relying party trust, and close the wizard.



When entering the display name, use the Relying Party Identifier for the Admin Node, exactly as it appears on the Single Sign-on page in the Grid Manager. For example, SG-DC1-ADM1.

7. Add a claim rule:
  - a. Right-click the trust, and select **Edit claim issuance policy**.
  - b. Click **Add rule**:
  - c. On the Select Rule Template page, select **Send LDAP Attributes as Claims** from the list, and click **Next**.
  - d. On the Configure Rule page, enter a display name for this rule.

For example, **ObjectGUID to Name ID**.

- e. For the Attribute Store, select **Active Directory**.
  - f. In the LDAP Attribute column of the Mapping table, type **objectGUID**.
  - g. In the Outgoing Claim Type column of the Mapping table, select **Name ID** from the drop-down list.
  - h. Click **Finish**, and click **OK**.
8. Confirm that the metadata was imported successfully.
    - a. Right-click the relying party trust to open its properties.
    - b. Confirm that the fields on the **Endpoints**, **Identifiers**, and **Signature** tabs are populated.

If the metadata is missing, confirm that the Federation metadata address is correct, or simply enter the values manually.

9. Repeat these steps to configure a relying party trust for all of the Admin Nodes in your StorageGRID system.
10. When you are done, return to StorageGRID and [test all relying party trusts](#) to confirm they are configured correctly.



## Creating a relying party trust manually

If you choose not to import the data for the relying party trusts, you can enter the values manually.

### What you'll need

- You have configured SSO in StorageGRID, and you know the fully qualified domain name (or the IP address) and the relying party identifier for each Admin Node in your system.



You must create a relying party trust for each Admin Node in your StorageGRID system. Having a relying party trust for each Admin Node ensures that users can securely sign in to and out of any Admin Node.

- You have the custom certificate that was uploaded for the StorageGRID management interface, or you know how to log in to an Admin Node from the command shell.
- You have experience creating relying party trusts in AD FS, or you have access to the Microsoft AD FS documentation.
- You are using the AD FS Management snap-in, and you belong to the Administrators group.

### About this task

These instructions apply to AD FS 4.0, which is included with Windows Server 2016. If you are using AD FS 3.0, which is included with Windows 2012 R2, you will notice slight differences in the procedure. See the Microsoft AD FS documentation if you have questions.

### Steps

1. In Windows Server Manager, click **Tools**, and then select **AD FS Management**.
2. Under Actions, click **Add Relying Party Trust**.
3. On the Welcome page, choose **Claims aware**, and click **Start**.
4. Select **Enter data about the relying party manually**, and click **Next**.
5. Complete the Relying Party Trust wizard:

- a. Enter a display name for this Admin Node.

For consistency, use the Relying Party Identifier for the Admin Node, exactly as it appears on the Single Sign-on page in the Grid Manager. For example, SG-DC1-ADM1.

- b. Skip the step to configure an optional token encryption certificate.
- c. On the Configure URL page, select the **Enable support for the SAML 2.0 WebSSO protocol** check box.
- d. Type the SAML service endpoint URL for the Admin Node:

`https://Admin_Node_FQDN/api/saml-response`

For *Admin\_Node\_FQDN*, enter the fully qualified domain name for the Admin Node. (If necessary, you can use the node's IP address instead. However, if you enter an IP address here, be aware that you must update or recreate this relying party trust if that IP address ever changes.)

- e. On the Configure Identifiers page, specify the Relying Party Identifier for the same Admin Node:

*Admin\_Node\_Identifier*



For *Admin\_Node\_Identifier*, enter the Relying Party Identifier for the Admin Node, exactly as it appears on the Single Sign-on page. For example, SG-DC1-ADM1.

- f. Review the settings, save the relying party trust, and close the wizard.

The Edit Claim Issuance Policy dialog box appears.



If the dialog box does not appear, right-click the trust, and select **Edit claim issuance policy**.

6. To start the Claim Rule wizard, click **Add rule**:

- a. On the Select Rule Template page, select **Send LDAP Attributes as Claims** from the list, and click **Next**.
- b. On the Configure Rule page, enter a display name for this rule.

For example, **ObjectGUID to Name ID**.

- c. For the Attribute Store, select **Active Directory**.
- d. In the LDAP Attribute column of the Mapping table, type **objectGUID**.
- e. In the Outgoing Claim Type column of the Mapping table, select **Name ID** from the drop-down list.
- f. Click **Finish**, and click **OK**.

7. Right-click the relying party trust to open its properties.

8. On the **Endpoints** tab, configure the endpoint for single logout (SLO):

- a. Click **Add SAML**.
- b. Select **Endpoint Type > SAML Logout**.
- c. Select **Binding > Redirect**.
- d. In the **Trusted URL** field, enter the URL used for single logout (SLO) from this Admin Node:

```
https://Admin_Node_FQDN/api/saml-logout
```

For *Admin\_Node\_FQDN*, enter the Admin Node's fully qualified domain name. (If necessary, you can use the node's IP address instead. However, if you enter an IP address here, be aware that you must update or recreate this relying party trust if that IP address ever changes.)

- e. Click **OK**.

9. On the **Signature** tab, specify the signature certificate for this relying party trust:

- a. Add the custom certificate:
  - If you have the custom management certificate you uploaded to StorageGRID, select that certificate.
  - If you do not have the custom certificate, log in to the Admin Node, go the `/var/local/mgmt-api` directory of the Admin Node, and add the `custom-server.crt` certificate file.

**Note:** Using the Admin Node's default certificate (`server.crt`) is not recommended. If the Admin Node fails, the default certificate will be regenerated when you recover the node, and you will need to update the relying party trust.

- b. Click **Apply**, and click **OK**.



The Relying Party properties are saved and closed.

10. Repeat these steps to configure a relying party trust for all of the Admin Nodes in your StorageGRID system.
11. When you are done, return to StorageGRID and [test all relying party trusts](#) to confirm they are configured correctly.

### Testing relying party trusts

Before you enforce the use of single sign-on (SSO) for StorageGRID, confirm that single sign-on and single logout (SLO) are correctly configured. If you created a relying party trust for each Admin Node, confirm you can use SSO and SLO for each Admin Node.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You have configured one or more relying party trusts in AD FS.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Single Sign-on**.

The Single Sign-on page appears, with the **Sandbox Mode** option selected.

2. In the instructions for sandbox mode, locate the link to your identity provider's sign-on page.

The URL is derived from the value you entered in the **Federated Service Name** field.

**Sandbox mode**

Sandbox mode is currently enabled. Use this mode to configure relying party trusts and to confirm that single sign-on (SSO) and single logout (SLO) are correctly configured for the StorageGRID system.

1. Use Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) to create relying party trusts for StorageGRID. Create one trust for each Admin Node, using the relying party identifier(s) shown below.
2. Go to your identity provider's sign-on page: <https://ad2016.saml.sgws/adfs/ls/idpinitiatedsignon.htm>
3. From this page, sign in to each StorageGRID relying party trust. If the SSO operation is successful, StorageGRID displays a page with a success message. Otherwise, an error message is displayed.

When you have confirmed SSO for each of the relying party trusts and you are ready to enforce the use of SSO for StorageGRID, change the SSO Status to Enabled, and click Save.

3. Click the link, or copy and paste the URL into a browser, to access your identity provider's sign-on page.
4. To confirm you can use SSO to sign in to StorageGRID, select **Sign in to one of the following sites**, select the relying party identifier for your primary Admin Node, and click **Sign in**.



You are not signed in.

☐ Sign in to this site.

☒ Sign in to one of the following sites:

SG-DC1-ADM1

Sign in

You are prompted to enter your username and password.

5. Enter your federated username and password.

- If the SSO sign-in and logout operations are successful, a success message appears.

✓ Single sign-on authentication and logout test completed successfully.

- If the SSO operation is unsuccessful, an error message appears. Fix the issue, clear the browser's cookies, and try again.

6. Repeat the previous steps to confirm you can sign in to any other Admin Nodes.

If all SSO sign-in and logout operations are successful, you are ready to enable SSO.

### Enabling single sign-on

After using sandbox mode to test all of your StorageGRID relying party trusts, you are ready to enable single sign-on (SSO).

### What you'll need

- You must have imported at least one federated group from the identity source and assigned Root Access management permissions to the group. You must confirm that at least one federated user has Root Access permission to the Grid Manager and to the Tenant Manager for any existing tenant accounts.
- You must have tested all relying party trusts using sandbox mode.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Single Sign-on**.

The Single Sign-on page appears with **Sandbox Mode** selected.

2. Change the SSO Status to **Enabled**.

3. Click **Save**.

A warning message appears.



## Warning

### Enable single sign-on

After you enable SSO, no local users—including the root user—will be able to sign in to the Grid Manager, the Tenant Manager, the Grid Management API, or the Tenant Management API.

Before proceeding, confirm the following:

- You have imported at least one federated group from the identity source and assigned Root Access management permissions to the group. You must confirm that at least one federated user has Root Access permission to the Grid Manager and to the Tenant Manager for any existing tenant accounts.
- You have tested all relying party trusts using sandbox mode.

Are you sure you want to enable single sign-on?

Cancel

OK

4. Review the warning, and click **OK**.

Single sign-on is now enabled.



All users must use SSO to access the Grid Manager, the Tenant Manager, the Grid Management API, and the Tenant Management API. Local users can no longer access StorageGRID.

### Disabling single sign-on

You can disable single sign-on (SSO) if you no longer want to use this functionality. You must disable single sign-on before you can disable identity federation.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Single Sign-on**.

The Single Sign-on page appears.

2. Select the **Disabled** option.
3. Click **Save**.

A warning message appears indicating that local users will now be able to sign in.



## Warning

### Disable single sign-on

After you disable SSO or switch to sandbox mode, local users will be able to sign in. Are you sure you want to proceed?

Cancel

OK

#### 4. Click **OK**.

The next time you sign in to StorageGRID, the StorageGRID Sign in page appears and you must enter the username and password for a local or federated StorageGRID user.

### Temporarily disabling and reenabling single sign-on for one Admin Node

You might not be able to sign in to the Grid Manager if the single sign-on (SSO) system goes down. In this case, you can temporarily disable and reenable SSO for one Admin Node. To disable and then reenable SSO, you must access the node's command shell.

#### What you'll need

- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file.
- You must know the password for the local root user.

#### About this task

After you disable SSO for one Admin Node, you can sign in to the Grid Manager as the local root user. To secure your StorageGRID system, you must use the node's command shell to reenable SSO on the Admin Node as soon as you sign out.



Disabling SSO for one Admin Node does not affect the SSO settings for any other Admin Nodes in the grid. The **Enable SSO** check box on the Single Sign-on page in the Grid Manager remains selected, and all existing SSO settings are maintained unless you update them.

#### Steps

1. Log in to an Admin Node:
  - a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@Admin_Node_IP`
  - b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.

2. Run the following command: `disable-saml`



A message indicates that the command applies to this Admin Node only.

3. Confirm that you want to disable SSO.

A message indicates that single sign-on is disabled on the node.

4. From a web browser, access the Grid Manager on the same Admin Node.

The Grid Manager sign-in page is now displayed because SSO has been disabled.

5. Sign in with the username root and the local root user's password.
6. If you disabled SSO temporarily because you needed to correct the SSO configuration:
  - a. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Single Sign-on**.
  - b. Change the incorrect or out-of-date SSO settings.
  - c. Click **Save**.

Clicking **Save** from the Single Sign-on page automatically reenables SSO for the entire grid.

7. If you disabled SSO temporarily because you needed to access the Grid Manager for some other reason:
  - a. Perform whatever task or tasks you need to perform.
  - b. Click **Sign Out**, and close the Grid Manager.
  - c. Reenable SSO on the Admin Node. You can perform either of the following steps:
    - Run the following command: `enable-saml`

A message indicates that the command applies to this Admin Node only.

Confirm that you want to enable SSO.

A message indicates that single sign-on is enabled on the node.

- Reboot the grid node: `reboot`

8. From a web browser, access the Grid Manager from the same Admin Node.
9. Confirm that the StorageGRID Sign in page appears and that you must enter your SSO credentials to access the Grid Manager.

## Related information

[Configuring single sign-on](#)

## Configuring administrator client certificates

You can use client certificates to allow authorized external clients to access the StorageGRID Prometheus database. Client certificates provide a secure way to use external tools to monitor StorageGRID.

If you need to access StorageGRID using an external monitoring tool, you must upload or generate a client certificate using the Grid Manager and copy the certificate information to the external tool.



## Adding administrator client certificates

To add a client certificate, you can provide your own certificate or generate one using the Grid Manager.

### What you'll need

- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must know the IP address or domain name of the Admin Node.
- You must have configured the StorageGRID Management Interface Server Certificate and have the corresponding CA bundle
- If you want to upload your own certificate, the public key and private key for the certificate must be available on your local computer.

### Steps

1. In the Grid Manager, select **Configuration > Access Control > Client Certificates**.

The Client Certificates page appears.

#### Client Certificates

You can upload or generate one or more client certificates to allow StorageGRID to authenticate external client access.

+ Add Edit Remove

Name	Allow Prometheus	Expiration Date
No client certificates configured.		

2. Select **Add**.

The Upload Certificate page appears.

#### Upload Certificate

Name

Allow Prometheus

☐

#### Certificate Details

Upload the public key for the client certificate.

Upload Client Certificate

Generate Client Certificate

Cancel

Save

3. Type a name between 1 and 32 characters for the certificate.
4. To access Prometheus metrics using your external monitoring tool, select the **Allow Prometheus** check box.
5. Upload or generate a certificate:
  - a. To upload a certificate, go [here](#).
  - b. To generate a certificate, go [here](#).



6. To upload a certificate:
  - a. Select **Upload Client Certificate**.
  - b. Browse for the public key for the certificate.

After you upload the public key for the certificate, the **Certificate metadata** and **Certificate PEM** fields are populated.

Upload Certificate

Name ⓘ

test-certificate-upload

Allow Prometheus ⓘ

☒

Certificate Details

Upload the public key for the client certificate.

Upload Client Certificate

Generate Client Certificate

Uploaded file name:

client (1).crt

Certificate metadata ⓘ

Subject DN: /C=US/ST=California/L=Sunnyvale/O=Example Co./OU=IT/CN=\*.s3.example.com

Serial Number: 0D:0E:FC:16:75:B8:BE:3E:7D:47:4D:05:49:08:F3:7B:E8:4A:71:90

Issuer DN: /C=US/ST=California/L=Sunnyvale/O=Example Co./OU=IT/CN=\*.s3.example.com

Issued On: 2020-06-19T22:11:56.000Z

Expires On: 2021-06-19T22:11:56.000Z

SHA-1 Fingerprint: 13:AA:D6:06:2B:90:FE:B7:7B:EB:1A:83:BE:C3:62:39:B7:A6:E7:F0

SHA-256 Fingerprint: 5C:29:06:6B:CF:81:50:B8:4F:A9:56:F7:A7:AB:3C:36:FA:3D:B7:32:A4:C9:74:85:2C:8D:E6:67:37:C3:AC:60

Certificate PEM ⓘ

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

MIIDmzCCAoOgAwIBAgIUQ78FnW4vj59R00FSQjze+hKcZAwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQAwDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxEzARBgNVBAgMCkNhbgG1mb3JuaWEeEjAQBgNVBAcM

CVN1bm55dmFeZTEUMBIGA1UECgwLRXhhbXBsZSBDby4xCzAJBgNVBAsMAk1UMRkw

FwYDVQDDBAqLnMzLmV4YW1wbGUuY29tMB4KDTIwMDYxOTIyMTE1N1oKDTIxMDYx

OTIyMTE1N1owDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxEzARBgNVBAgMCkNhbgG1mb3JuaWEeEjAQB

BgNVBAcMCMV1bm55dmFeZTEUMBIGA1UECgwLRXhhbXBsZSBDby4xCzAJBgNVBAsM

Ak1UMRkwFwYDVQDDBAqLnMzLmV4YW1wbGUuY29tMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEF

RAOCAQ8AMIIBCBKCAQEAeVgq2MNjvVotLeGtq1Co4coJmsQ2ygrhuwS2a0bgMnjf

cwUgHNVFXGuGlzY/Tl37r3Dk5buZfyGYAeJ6mqbQA6cE3ypOp5Hx7Cm/ANJkmFw6

-----END CERTIFICATE-----

Copy certificate to clipboard

Cancel

Save

- c. Select **Copy certificate to clipboard** and paste the certificate to your external monitoring tool.
  - d. Use an editing tool to copy and paste the private key to your external monitoring tool.
  - e. Select **Save** to save the certificate in the Grid Manager.
7. To generate a certificate:
  - a. Select **Generate Client Certificate**.
  - b. Enter the domain name or IP address of the Admin Node.
  - c. Optionally, enter an X.509 subject, also referred to as the Distinguished Name (DN), to identify the administrator who owns the certificate.
  - d. Optionally, select the number of days the certificate is valid. The default is 730 days.
  - e. Select **Generate**.

67



The **Certificate metadata**, **Certificate PEM**, and **Certificate private key** fields are populated.

Upload Certificate

Name ⓘ

test-certificate-generate

Allow Prometheus ⓘ

☒

Certificate Details

Upload the public key for the client certificate.

Upload Client Certificate

Generate Client Certificate

Certificate metadata ⓘ

Subject DN: /CN=test.com

Serial Number: 08:F8:F8:76:B2:13:E4:DF:54:83:3D:35:56:6F:2A:03:53:B0:E2:0A

Issuer DN: /CN=test.com

Issued On: 2020-11-20T22:44:46.000Z

Expires On: 2022-11-20T22:44:46.000Z

SHA-1 Fingerprint: 6E:DB:8C:F8:3E:20:68:E4:C6:42:52:5F:32:7E:E7:93:66:69:F3:3D

SHA-256 Fingerprint: 73:D3:51:83:ED:D3:89:AD:7B:89:4C:AF:AE:34:76:B6:42:FE:0D:EF:78:C0:A4:66:C2:EB:65:64:C3:D4:7A:B0

Certificate PEM ⓘ

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

MIICyxCcAbOgAwIBAgIUCPj7drIT8N9Ug=01Vm8qA1Ow4gowDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQAwEzERMA8GA1UEAwwIdGVudC5jb20wHhcNMjIwNDQ2WjI0NDQ2WjI0NDQ2WjATMREwDwYDVQQDDAho2XN0LmNvbTCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCCARoCggEBAK02B8mx2jFrGuBb2ZMjcidf/tTcKwLb8m+4vIwti1grwRKhH291B9YIqN/Vo729R2mNKRyBwkyQTkGCO2Ixxv08TBLeIWfb8S+TgcIcMyt1V1FOssBWy402xxjnK3/X+AX+6s2WZ1sVe+3CDjGu4ic0V/uVQx4yA1T9SoEnj8mOaLCVjL6iVnkUGS8GbkYUFeOaoMjsL6TN1QeoFv9VEB0x8KCP4D7FDbaIy2f9Ng5r8fEOQoLNsXCasLO4D7j2qFqOYUpFJ3MOoh1x0nSpQ78ZSKFYwVtDKg6v52P8UBM1o8GeuofaW+dbpLZMpo9N1VfFhqbXs9AaxN8s+kCAwEAAaMXMSEUwEwYDVROBAww

Copy certificate to clipboard

Certificate private key ⓘ

-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----

MIIEpQIBAAKCAQEAxT2OH2bHaM+sa4Fv2kyNyJ1/+1NwxEu0Eab7i8jC2KWC/BFeAdneUH1ghCf9Wjwb1HaY0orIHCTJB0QYI5kjG+/RjMEt4h29sKxOBwigsK2VWU7OwF2jPg7bPFG0orf9f4Bf7xN1ZkixV75IICMa7iJxRX+5VDPHjIDVP1KggqMgySseJWMvqJWwRQYFI2uTJQ948qgyOwvPM2VDOgW/1UQHTEEoKngFeUNtojLZ/02DmtJ8Q8Cg=202xcoJxMz7gPuNmoWo5h8kUncw6iHXH3fmlDvxnkp9jBw0MqDm/nY/xQEwJw266h9pb81uktk2k703VW0WGCFd70DFE3yyOQIDAQABaoIBAQCFEUfY4pE0Hqcv2uEL6De4yXMTwg/8Gn+W8mvtcdgQB4xWEGQxk1kiEUG+HTkYxfJcn6XX0vACDYAC/Hh1Q67xDPvRjdpuK0x1W8evvsEmpBw99MqH9Y2UGx6Yub9USJaQfDvjA4NvaonMxaYJREBIAr7f2x2xXVY8b0sRPAjrnnoYCqslLct5Y0K73s0GSnaTmwIdm2YM6EE

Copy private key to clipboard

⚠ You will not be able to view the certificate private key after you close this dialog. To save the keys for future reference, copy and paste the values to another location.

Cancel

Save

f. Select **Copy certificate to clipboard** and paste the certificate to your external monitoring tool.

g. Select **Copy private key to clipboard** and paste the key to your external monitoring tool.



You will not be able to view the private key after you close the dialog box. Copy the key to a safe location.

h. Select **Save** to save the certificate in the Grid Manager.

8. Configure the following settings on your external monitoring tool, such as Grafana.



A Grafana example is shown in the following screenshot:

Name ⓘ sg-prometheus Default ☒

### HTTP

URL ⓘ https://admin-node.example.com:9091

Access Server (default) ▼ [Help >](#)

Whitelisted Cookies ⓘ New tag (enter key to [Add](#))

### Auth

Basic auth ☐ With Credentials ⓘ ☐

TLS Client Auth ☒ With CA Cert ⓘ ☒

Skip TLS Verify ☐

Forward OAuth Identity ⓘ ☐

### TLS/SSL Auth Details ⓘ

CA Cert Begins with -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

ServerName admin-node.example.com

Client Cert Begins with -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

a. **Name:** Enter a name for the connection.

StorageGRID does not require this information, but you must provide a name to test the connection.

b. **URL:** Enter the domain name or IP address for the Admin Node. Specify HTTPS and port 9091.



For example: `https://admin-node.example.com:9091`

- c. Enable **TLS Client Authorization** and **With CA Cert**.
- d. Copy and paste the Management Interface Server Certificate or CA bundle to **CA Cert** under TLS/SSL Auth Details.
- e. **ServerName**: Enter the domain name of the Admin Node.

ServerName must match the domain name as it appears in the Management Interface Server Certificate.

- f. Save and test the certificate and private key that you copied from StorageGRID or a local file.

You can now access the Prometheus metrics from StorageGRID with your external monitoring tool.

For information about the metrics, see the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID.

## Related information

[Using StorageGRID security certificates](#)

[Configuring a custom server certificate for the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager](#)

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

## Editing administrator client certificates

You can edit a certificate to change its name, enable or disable Prometheus access, or upload a new certificate when the current one has expired.

### What you'll need

- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must know the IP address or domain name of the Admin Node.
- If you want to upload a new certificate and private key, they must be available on your local computer.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Client Certificates**.

The Client Certificates page appears. The existing certificates are listed.

Certificate expiration dates are listed in the table. If a certificate will expire soon or is already expired, a message appears in the table and an alert is triggered.

+ Add

✎ Edit

✕ Remove

	Name	Allow Prometheus	Expiration Date
<input type="radio"/>	test-certificate-upload	✓	2021-06-19 16:11:56 MDT
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	test-certificate-generate	✓	2022-08-20 09:42:00 MDT

Displaying 2 certificates.



2. Select the radio button to the left of the certificate you want to edit.
3. Select **Edit**.

The Edit Certificate dialog box appears.

Edit Certificate test-certificate-generate

Name ⓘ

test-certificate-generate

Allow Prometheus ⓘ

☒

Certificate Details

Upload the public key for the client certificate.

Upload Client Certificate

Generate Client Certificate

Certificate metadata ⓘ

Subject DN: /CN=test.com

Serial Number: 0C:11:87:6C:1E:FD:13:16:F3:F2:06:D9:DA:6D:BC:CE:2A:A9:C3:53

Issuer DN: /CN=test.com

Issued On: 2020-11-23T15:53:33.000Z

Expires On: 2022-11-23T15:53:33.000Z

SHA-1 Fingerprint: AE:E6:70:A7:D3:C3:39:7A:09:F9:62:9B:81:8A:87:CD:43:16:89:A7

SHA-256 Fingerprint: 63:07:BF:FF:08:1E:84:F1:D4:67:C6:16:B0:35:26:00:C6:A3:13:11:7E:5E:90:EC:7A:7B:EF:23:14:55:3D:56

Certificate PEM ⓘ

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

MIICyzCCAbOgAwIBAgIUDBGHbE79Exbz8qbZ2m28ziqpw1MwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEL

BQAwEzERMASGA1UEAwIdGVzdC5jb20wHhcNMjAwMTIzMTU1MzMzWhcNMjAwMTIz

MTU1MzMzWjATMREwDwYDVQQDDAh0ZXN0LmNvbTCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQAD

ggEPADCCAQoCggEBBAKdGScneCDFDs1jvlnX9ow6oPrdU7m2EN6SS6xdVI155eCH+

hkwO5e2Mym7EhbNrfwOt2nMjQkcaKirk8OAmutRgG6N1N12FIW0qY0uzFQ0QddLq

n7ymFw6w8a9zYSu7bLp84Yn0/LSDPk+h3Jic7Mrt2X70It5ZDRwFmbLNvEvYEtIS

h+FbNh885AIRO2eLxvC0IRij1by8e76wK+Wmc97HdxRSGyxIWk6BD47XC+d0rv55

wvtjc/41qc5xsE6XmJs2yJg4VARx10y8Icwa9fz0O+xPwIdC0NwXkpWJXeBnCoXx

YqQxbWzjzr+iVLJqLTMxU8zTTT30zUgN00M82GJUCAwEAAaMKMBUwEwYDVR0RBAAw

Copy certificate to clipboard

Cancel

Save

4. Make the desired changes to the certificate.
5. Select **Save** to save the certificate in the Grid Manager.
6. If you uploaded a new certificate:
  - a. Select **Copy certificate to clipboard** to paste the certificate to your external monitoring tool.
  - b. Use an editing tool to copy and paste the new private key to your external monitoring tool.
  - c. Save and test the certificate and private key in your external monitoring tool.
7. If you generated a new certificate:
  - a. Select **Copy certificate to clipboard** to paste the certificate to your external monitoring tool.
  - b. Select **Copy private key to clipboard** to paste the certificate to your external monitoring tool.



You will not be able to view or copy the private key after you close the dialog box. Copy the key to a safe location.



- c. Save and test the certificate and private key in your external monitoring tool.

## Removing administrator client certificates

If you no longer need a certificate, you can remove it.

### What you'll need

- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.


### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Access Control > Client Certificates**.

The Client Certificates page appears. The existing certificates are listed.

2. Select the radio button to the left of the certificate you want to remove.
3. Select **Remove**.

A confirmation dialog box appears.

 **Warning**

Delete certificate

Are you sure you want to delete the certificate "test-certificate-generate"?

Cancel OK

4. Select **OK**.

The certificate is removed.

## Configuring key management servers

You can configure one or more external key management servers (KMS) to protect the data on specially configured appliance nodes.

### What is a key management server (KMS)?

A key management server (KMS) is an external, third-party system that provides encryption keys to



StorageGRID appliance nodes at the associated StorageGRID site using the Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP).

You can use one or more key management servers to manage the node encryption keys for any StorageGRID appliance nodes that have the **Node Encryption** setting enabled during installation. Using key management servers with these appliance nodes lets you protect your data even if an appliance is removed from the data center. After the appliance volumes are encrypted, you cannot access any data on the appliance unless the node can communicate with the KMS.



StorageGRID does not create or manage the external keys used to encrypt and decrypt appliance nodes. If you plan to use an external key management server to protect StorageGRID data, you must understand how to set up that server, and you must understand how to manage the encryption keys. Performing key management tasks is beyond the scope of these instructions. If you need help, see the documentation for your key management server or contact technical support.

## Reviewing StorageGRID encryption methods

StorageGRID provides a number of options for encrypting data. You should review the available methods to determine which methods meet your data-protection requirements.

The table provides a high-level summary of the encryption methods available in StorageGRID.

Encryption option	How it works	Applies to
Key management server (KMS) in Grid Manager	You configure a key management server for the StorageGRID site ( <b>Configuration &gt; System Settings &gt; Key Management Server</b> ) and enable node encryption for the appliance. Then, an appliance node connects to the KMS to request a key encryption key (KEK). This key encrypts and decrypts the data encryption key (DEK) on each volume.	Appliance nodes that have <b>Node Encryption</b> enabled during installation. All data on the appliance is protected against physical loss or removal from the data center. Can be used with some StorageGRID storage and services appliances.
Drive security in SANtricity System Manager	If the Drive Security feature is enabled for a storage appliance, you can use SANtricity System Manager to create and manage the security key. The key is required to access the data on the secured drives.	Storage appliances that have Full Disk Encryption (FDE) drives or Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) drives. All data on the secured drives is protected against physical loss or removal from the data center. Cannot be used with some storage appliances or with any service appliances.  <a href="#">SG6000 storage appliances</a>  <a href="#">SG5700 storage appliances</a>  <a href="#">SG5600 storage appliances</a>



Encryption option	How it works	Applies to
Stored Object Encryption grid option	The <b>Stored Object Encryption</b> option can be enabled in the Grid Manager ( <b>Configuration &gt; System Settings &gt; Grid Options</b> ). When enabled, any new objects that are not encrypted at the bucket level or at the object level are encrypted during ingest.	Newly ingested S3 and Swift object data. Existing stored objects are not encrypted. Object metadata and other sensitive data are not encrypted.  <a href="#">Configuring stored object encryption</a>
S3 bucket encryption	You issue a PUT Bucket encryption request to enable encryption for the bucket. Any new objects that are not encrypted at the object level are encrypted during ingest.	Newly ingested S3 object data only. Encryption must be specified for the bucket. Existing bucket objects are not encrypted. Object metadata and other sensitive data are not encrypted.  <a href="#">Use S3</a>
S3 object server-side encryption (SSE)	You issue an S3 request to store an object and include the <code>x-amz-server-side-encryption</code> request header.	Newly ingested S3 object data only. Encryption must be specified for the object. Object metadata and other sensitive data are not encrypted.  StorageGRID manages the keys.  <a href="#">Use S3</a>
S3 object server-side encryption with customer-provided keys (SSE-C)	You issue an S3 request to store an object and include three request headers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>x-amz-server-side-encryption-customer-algorithm</code></li> <li><code>x-amz-server-side-encryption-customer-key</code></li> <li><code>x-amz-server-side-encryption-customer-key-MD5</code></li> </ul>	Newly ingested S3 object data only. Encryption must be specified for the object. Object metadata and other sensitive data are not encrypted.  Keys are managed outside of StorageGRID.  <a href="#">Use S3</a>



Encryption option	How it works	Applies to
External volume or datastore encryption	You use an encryption method outside of StorageGRID to encrypt an entire volume or datastore, if your deployment platform supports it.	<p>All object data, metadata, and system configuration data, assuming every volume or datastore is encrypted.</p> <p>An external encryption method provides tighter control over encryption algorithms and keys. Can be combined with the other methods listed.</p>
Object encryption outside of StorageGRID	You use an encryption method outside of StorageGRID to encrypt object data and metadata before they are ingested into StorageGRID.	<p>Object data and metadata only (system configuration data is not encrypted).</p> <p>An external encryption method provides tighter control over encryption algorithms and keys. Can be combined with the other methods listed.</p> <p><a href="#">Amazon Simple Storage Service - Developer Guide: Protecting data using client-side encryption</a></p>

## Using multiple encryption methods

Depending on your requirements, you can use more than one encryption method at a time. For example:

- You can use a KMS to protect appliance nodes and also use the drive security feature in SANtricity System Manager to “double encrypt” data on the self-encrypting drives in the same appliances.
- You can use a KMS to secure data on appliance nodes and also use the Stored Object Encryption grid option to encrypt all objects when they are ingested.

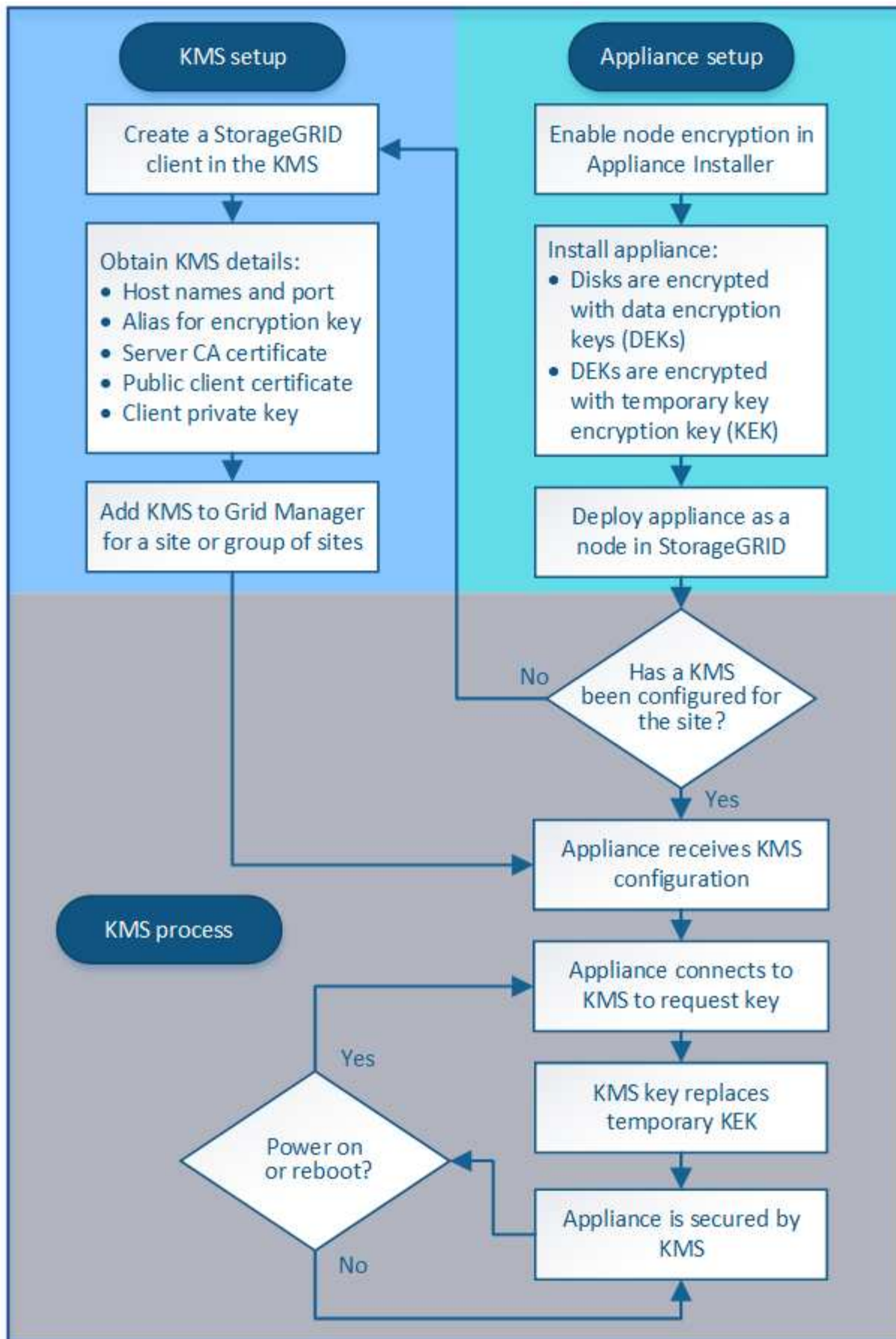
If only a small portion of your objects require encryption, consider controlling encryption at the bucket or individual object level instead. Enabling multiple levels of encryption has an additional performance cost.

## Overview of KMS and appliance configuration

Before you can use a key management server (KMS) to secure StorageGRID data on appliance nodes, you must complete two configuration tasks: setting up one or more KMS servers and enabling node encryption for the appliance nodes. When these two configuration tasks are complete, the key management process occurs automatically.

The flowchart shows the high-level steps for using a KMS to secure StorageGRID data on appliance nodes.





The flowchart shows KMS setup and appliance setup occurring in parallel; however, you can set up the key



management servers before or after you enable node encryption for new appliance nodes, based on your requirements.

## Setting up the key management server (KMS)

Setting up a key management server includes the following high-level steps.

Step	Refer to
Access the KMS software and add a client for StorageGRID to each KMS or KMS cluster.	<a href="#">Configuring StorageGRID as a client in the KMS</a>
Obtain the required information for the StorageGRID client on the KMS.	<a href="#">Configuring StorageGRID as a client in the KMS</a>
Add the KMS to the Grid Manager, assign it to a single site or to a default group of sites, upload the required certificates, and save the KMS configuration.	<a href="#">Adding a key management server (KMS)</a>

## Setting up the appliance

Setting up an appliance node for KMS use includes the following high-level steps.

1. During the hardware configuration stage of appliance installation, use the StorageGRID Appliance Installer to enable the **Node Encryption** setting for the appliance.



You cannot enable the **Node Encryption** setting after an appliance is added to the grid, and you cannot use external key management for appliances that do not have node encryption enabled.

2. Run the StorageGRID Appliance Installer. During installation, a random data encryption key (DEK) is assigned to each appliance volume, as follows:
  - The DEKs are used to encrypt the data on each volume. These keys are generated using Linux Unified Key Setup (LUKS) disk encryption in the appliance OS and cannot be changed.
  - Each individual DEK is encrypted by a master key encryption key (KEK). The initial KEK is a temporary key that encrypts the DEKs until the appliance can connect to the KMS.
3. Add the appliance node to StorageGRID.

For details, refer to the following:

- [SG100 & SG1000 services appliances](#)
- [SG6000 storage appliances](#)
- [SG5700 storage appliances](#)
- [SG5600 storage appliances](#)

## Key management encryption process (occurs automatically)

Key management encryption includes the following high-level steps that are performed automatically.

1. When you install an appliance that has node encryption enabled into the grid, StorageGRID determines if a



KMS configuration exists for the site that contains the new node.

- If a KMS has already been configured for the site, the appliance receives the KMS configuration.
  - If a KMS has not yet been configured for the site, data on the appliance continues to be encrypted by the temporary KEK until you configure a KMS for the site and the appliance receives the KMS configuration.
2. The appliance uses the KMS configuration to connect to the KMS and request an encryption key.
  3. The KMS sends an encryption key to the appliance. The new key from the KMS replaces the temporary KEK and is now used to encrypt and decrypt the DEKs for the appliance volumes.



Any data that exists before the encrypted appliance node connects to the configured KMS is encrypted with a temporary key. However, the appliance volumes should not be considered protected from removal from the data center until the temporary key is replaced by the KMS encryption key.

4. If the appliance is powered on or rebooted, it reconnects to the KMS to request the key. The key, which is saved in volatile memory, cannot survive a loss of power or a reboot.

## Considerations and requirements for using a key management server

Before configuring an external key management server (KMS), you must understand the considerations and requirements.

### What are the KMIP requirements?

StorageGRID supports KMIP version 1.4.

#### [Key Management Interoperability Protocol Specification Version 1.4](#)

Communications between the appliance nodes and the configured KMS use secure TLS connections. StorageGRID supports the following TLS v1.2 ciphers for KMIP:

- TLS\_ECDHE\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384

You must ensure that each appliance node that uses node encryption has network access to the KMS or KMS cluster you configured for the site.

The network firewall settings must allow each appliance node to communicate through the port used for Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) communications. The default KMIP port is 5696.

### Which appliances are supported?

You can use a key management server (KMS) to manage encryption keys for any StorageGRID appliance in your grid that has the **Node Encryption** setting enabled. This setting can only be enabled during the hardware configuration stage of appliance installation using the StorageGRID Appliance Installer.



You cannot enable node encryption after an appliance is added to the grid, and you cannot use external key management for appliances that do not have node encryption enabled.

You can use the configured KMS for the following StorageGRID appliances and appliance nodes:



Appliance	Node type
SG1000 services appliance	Admin Node or Gateway Node
SG100 services appliance	Admin Node or Gateway Node
SG6000 storage appliance	Storage Node
SG5700 storage appliance	Storage Node
SG5600 storage appliance	Storage Node

You cannot use the configured KMS for software-based (non-appliance) nodes, including the following:

- Nodes deployed as virtual machines (VMs)
- Nodes deployed within Docker containers on Linux hosts

Nodes deployed on these other platforms can use encryption outside of StorageGRID at the datastore or disk level.

### When should I configure key management servers?

For a new installation, you should typically set up one or more key management servers in the Grid Manager before creating tenants. This order ensures that the nodes are protected before any object data is stored on them.

You can configure the key management servers in the Grid Manager before or after you install the appliance nodes.

### How many key management servers do I need?

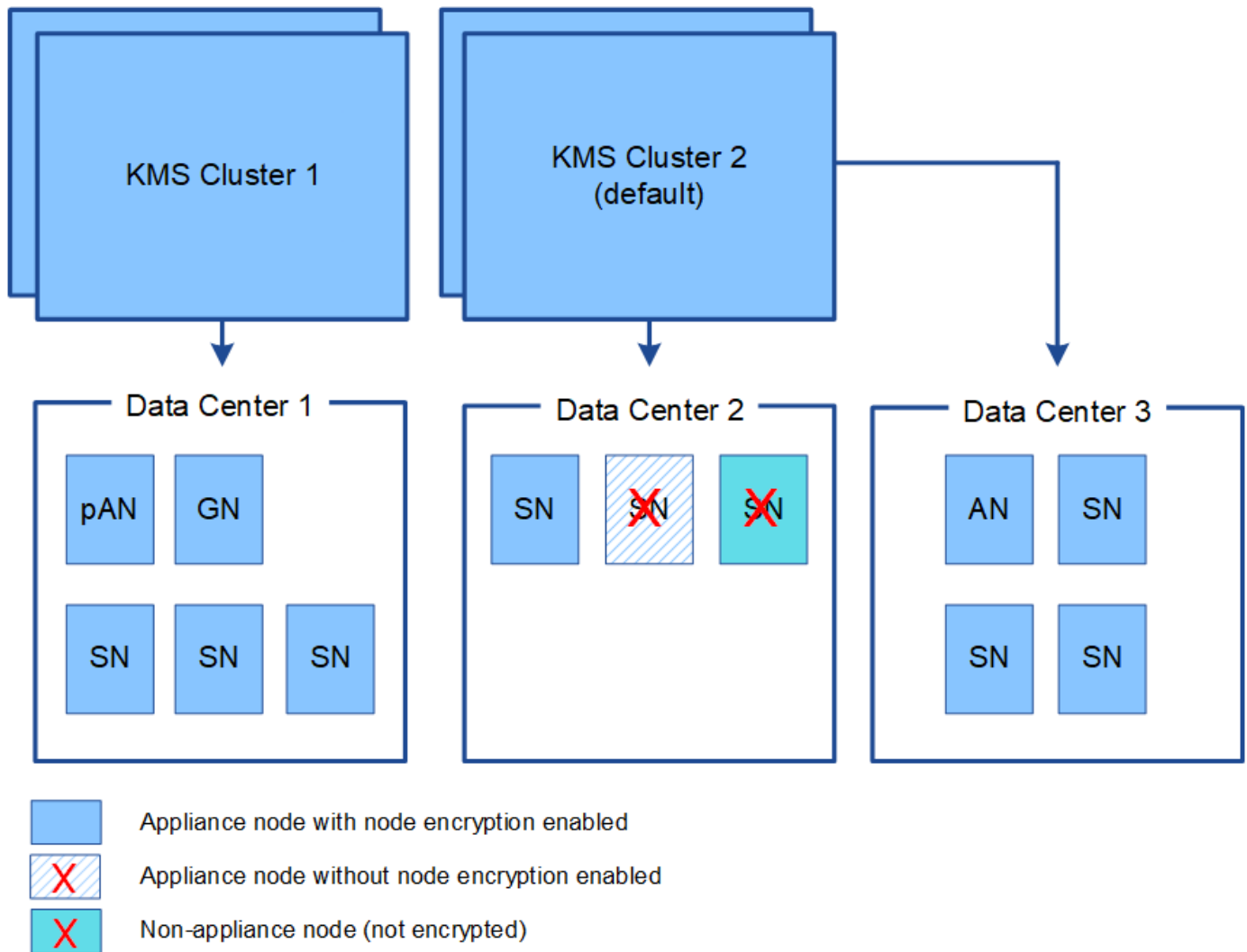
You can configure one or more external key management servers to provide encryption keys to the appliance nodes in your StorageGRID system. Each KMS provides a single encryption key to the StorageGRID appliance nodes at a single site or at a group of sites.

StorageGRID supports the use of KMS clusters. Each KMS cluster contains multiple, replicated key management servers that share configuration settings and encryption keys. Using KMS clusters for key management is recommended because it improves the failover capabilities of a high availability configuration.

For example, suppose your StorageGRID system has three data center sites. You might configure one KMS cluster to provide a key to all appliance nodes at Data Center 1 and a second KMS cluster to provide a key to all appliance nodes at all other sites. When you add the second KMS cluster, you can configure a default KMS for Data Center 2 and Data Center 3.

Note that you cannot use a KMS for non-appliance nodes or for any appliance nodes that did not have the **Node Encryption** setting enabled during installation.





### What happens when a key is rotated?

As a security best practice, you should periodically rotate the encryption key used by each configured KMS.

When rotating the encryption key, use the KMS software to rotate from the last used version of the key to a new version of the same key. Do not rotate to an entirely different key.



Never attempt to rotate a key by changing the key name (alias) for the KMS in the Grid Manager. Instead, rotate the key by updating the key version in the KMS software. Use the same key alias for new keys as was used for previous keys. If you change the key alias for a configured KMS, StorageGRID might not be able to decrypt your data.

When the new key version is available:

- It is automatically distributed to the encrypted appliance nodes at the site or sites associated with the KMS. The distribution should occur within an hour of when the key is rotated.
- If the encrypted appliance node is offline when the new key version is distributed, the node will receive the new key as soon as it reboots.
- If the new key version cannot be used to encrypt appliance volumes for any reason, the **KMS encryption key rotation failed** alert is triggered for the appliance node. You might need to contact technical support



for help in resolving this alert.

### Can I reuse an appliance node after it has been encrypted?

If you need to install an encrypted appliance into another StorageGRID system, you must first decommission the grid node to move object data to another node. Then, you can use the StorageGRID Appliance Installer to clear the KMS configuration. Clearing the KMS configuration disables the **Node Encryption** setting and removes the association between the appliance node and the KMS configuration for the StorageGRID site.



With no access to the KMS encryption key, any data that remains on the appliance can no longer be accessed and is permanently locked.

[SG100 & SG1000 services appliances](#)

[SG6000 storage appliances](#)

[SG5700 storage appliances](#)

[SG5600 storage appliances](#)

### Considerations for changing the KMS for a site

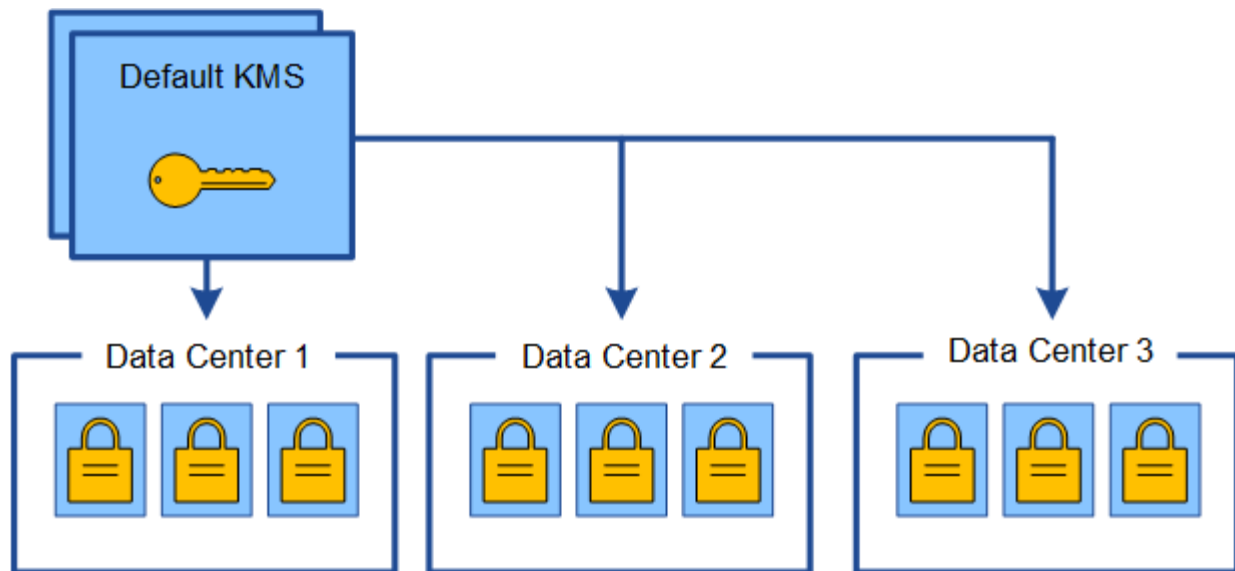
Each key management server (KMS) or KMS cluster provides an encryption key to all appliance nodes at a single site or at a group of sites. If you need to change which KMS is used for a site, you might need to copy the encryption key from one KMS to another.

If you change the KMS used for a site, you must ensure that the previously encrypted appliance nodes at that site can be decrypted using the key stored on the new KMS. In some cases, you might need to copy the current version of the encryption key from the original KMS to the new KMS. You must ensure that the KMS has the correct key to decrypt the encrypted appliance nodes at the site.

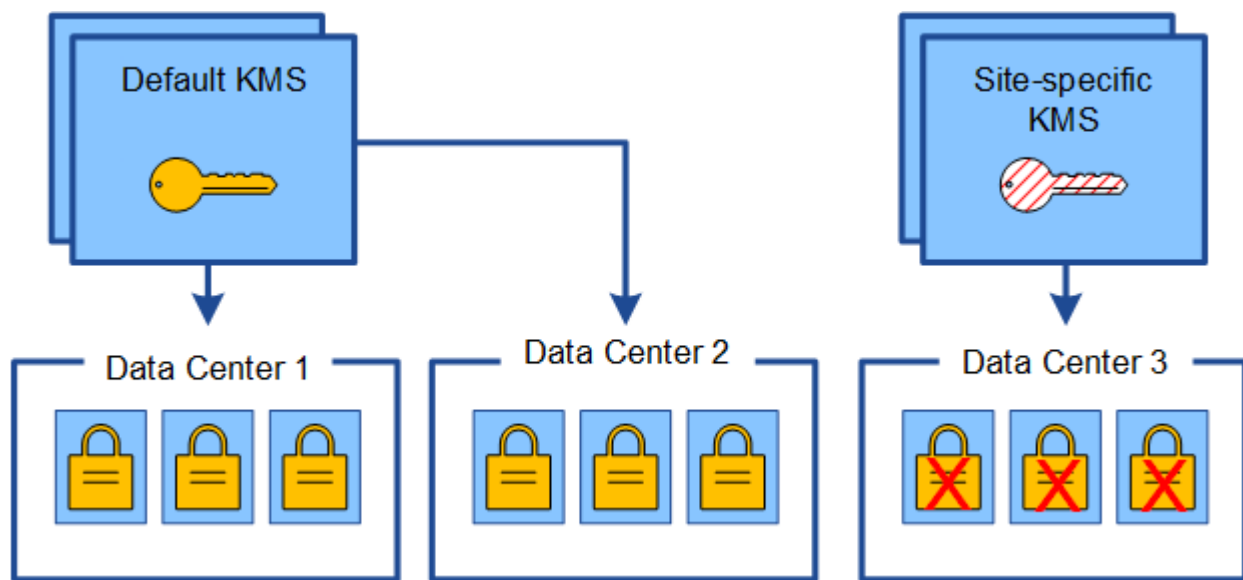
For example:

1. You initially configure a default KMS that applies to all sites that do not have a dedicated KMS.
2. When the KMS is saved, all appliance nodes that have the **Node Encryption** setting enabled connect to the KMS and request the encryption key. This key is used to encrypt the appliance nodes at all sites. This same key must also be used to decrypt those appliances.



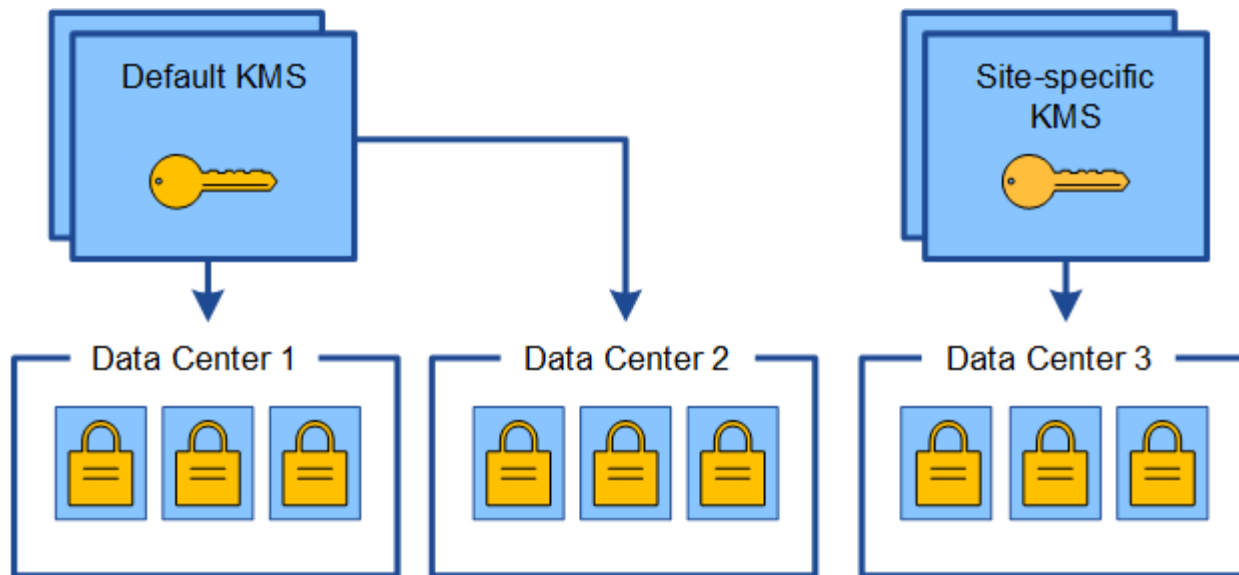


3. You decide to add a site-specific KMS for one site (Data Center 3 in the figure). However, because the appliance nodes are already encrypted, a validation error occurs when you attempt to save the configuration for the site-specific KMS. The error occurs because the site-specific KMS does not have the correct key to decrypt the nodes at that site.



4. To address the issue, you copy the current version of the encryption key from the default KMS to the new KMS. (Technically, you copy the original key to a new key with the same alias. The original key becomes a prior version of the new key.) The site-specific KMS now has the correct key to decrypt the appliance nodes at Data Center 3, so it can be saved in StorageGRID.





### Use cases for changing which KMS is used for a site

The table summarizes the required steps for the most common cases for changing the KMS for a site.

Use case for changing a site's KMS	Required steps
You have one or more site-specific KMS entries, and you want to use one of them as the default KMS.	<p>Edit the site-specific KMS. In the <b>Manages keys for</b> field, select <b>Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)</b>. The site-specific KMS will now be used as the default KMS. It will apply to any sites that do not have a dedicated KMS.</p> <p><a href="#">Editing a key management server (KMS)</a></p>
You have a default KMS and you add a new site in an expansion. You do not want to use the default KMS for the new site.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If the appliance nodes at the new site have already been encrypted by the default KMS, use the KMS software to copy the current version of the encryption key from the default KMS to a new KMS.</li> <li>2. Using the Grid Manager, add the new KMS and select the site.</li> </ol> <p><a href="#">Adding a key management server (KMS)</a></p>
You want the KMS for a site to use a different server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If the appliance nodes at the site have already been encrypted by the existing KMS, use the KMS software to copy the current version of the encryption key from the existing KMS to the new KMS.</li> <li>2. Using the Grid Manager, edit the existing KMS configuration and enter the new host name or IP address.</li> </ol> <p><a href="#">Adding a key management server (KMS)</a></p>



## Configuring StorageGRID as a client in the KMS

You must configure StorageGRID as a client for each external key management server or KMS cluster before you can add the KMS to StorageGRID.

### About this task

These instructions apply to Thales CipherTrust Manager k170v, versions 2.0, 2.1, and 2.2. If you have questions about using a different key management server with StorageGRID, contact technical support.

### Thales CipherTrust Manager

### Steps

1. From the KMS software, create a StorageGRID client for each KMS or KMS cluster you plan to use.

Each KMS manages a single encryption key for the StorageGRID appliances nodes at a single site or at a group of sites.

2. From the KMS software, create an AES encryption key for each KMS or KMS cluster.

The encryption key needs to be exportable.

3. Record the following information for each KMS or KMS cluster.

You need this information when you add the KMS to StorageGRID.

- Host name or IP address for each server.
- KMIP port used by the KMS.
- Key alias for the encryption key in the KMS.



The encryption key must already exist in the KMS. StorageGRID does not create or manage KMS keys.

4. For each KMS or KMS cluster, obtain a server certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) or a certificate bundle that contains each of the PEM-encoded CA certificate files, concatenated in certificate chain order.

The server certificate allows the external KMS to authenticate itself to StorageGRID.

- The certificate must use the Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) Base-64 encoded X.509 format.
- The Subject Alternative Name (SAN) field in each server certificate must include the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address that StorageGRID will connect to.



When you configure the KMS in StorageGRID, you must enter the same FQDNs or IP addresses in the **Hostname** field.

- The server certificate must match the certificate used by the KMIP interface of the KMS, which typically uses port 5696.
5. Obtain the public client certificate issued to StorageGRID by the external KMS and the private key for the client certificate.

The client certificate allows StorageGRID to authenticate itself to the KMS.



## Adding a key management server (KMS)

You use the StorageGRID Key Management Server wizard to add each KMS or KMS cluster.

### What you'll need

- You must have reviewed the [considerations and requirements for using a key management server](#).
- You must have [configured StorageGRID as a client in the KMS](#), and you must have the required information for each KMS or KMS cluster
- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

### About this task

If possible, configure any site-specific key management servers before configuring a default KMS that applies to all sites not managed by another KMS. If you create the default KMS first, all node-encrypted appliances in the grid will be encrypted by the default KMS. If you want to create a site-specific KMS later, you must first copy the current version of the encryption key from the default KMS to the new KMS.

### [Considerations for changing the KMS for a site](#)

#### Steps

1. [Step 1: Enter KMS Details](#)
2. [Step 2: Upload Server Certificate](#)
3. [Step 3: Upload Client Certificates](#)

#### Step 1: Enter KMS Details

In Step 1 (Enter KMS Details) of the Add a Key Management Server wizard, you provide details about the KMS or KMS cluster.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Key Management Server**.

The Key Management Server page appears with the Configuration Details tab selected.



## Key Management Server

If your StorageGRID system includes appliance nodes with node encryption enabled, you can use an external key management server (KMS) to manage the encryption keys that protect your StorageGRID at rest.

Configuration Details

Encrypted Nodes

You can configure more than one KMS (or KMS cluster) to manage the encryption keys for appliance nodes. For example, you can configure one default KMS to manage the keys for all appliance nodes within a group of sites and a second KMS to manage the keys for the appliance nodes at a particular site.

Before adding a KMS:

- Ensure that the KMS is KMIP-compliant.
- Configure StorageGRID as a client in the KMS.
- Enable node encryption for each appliance during appliance installation. You cannot enable node encryption after an appliance is added to the grid and you cannot use a KMS for appliances that do not have node encryption enabled.

For complete instructions, see [administering StorageGRID](#).

+ Create Edit Remove

KMS Display Name ?

Key Name ?

Manages keys for ?

Hostname ?

Certificate Status ?

No key management servers have been configured. Select **Create**.

## 2. Select **Create**.

Step 1 (Enter KMS Details) of the Add a Key Management Server wizard appears.

### Add a Key Management Server



Enter information about the external key management server (KMS) and the StorageGRID client you configured in that KMS. If you are configuring a KMS cluster, select + to add a hostname for each server in the cluster.

KMS Display Name ?	<input type="text"/>
Key Name ?	<input type="text"/>
Manages keys for ?	-- Choose One --
Port ?	<input type="text" value="5696"/>
Hostname ?	<input type="text"/>

+

Cancel


Next

## 3. Enter the following information for the KMS and the StorageGRID client you configured in that KMS.

Field	Description
KMS Display Name	A descriptive name to help you identify this KMS. Must be between 1 and 64 characters.



Field	Description
Key Name	The exact key alias for the StorageGRID client in the KMS. Must be between 1 and 255 characters.
Manages keys for	<p>The StorageGRID site that will be associated with this KMS. If possible, you should configure any site-specific key management servers before configuring a default KMS that applies to all sites not managed by another KMS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select a site if this KMS will manage encryption keys for the appliance nodes at a specific site.</li> <li>• Select <b>Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)</b> to configure a default KMS that will apply to any sites that do not have a dedicated KMS and to any sites you add in subsequent expansions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> A validation error will occur when you save the KMS configuration if you select a site that was previously encrypted by the default KMS but you did not provide the current version of original encryption key to the new KMS.</p>
Port	The port the KMS server uses for Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) communications. Defaults to 5696, which is the KMIP standard port.
Hostname	<p>The fully qualified domain name or IP address for the KMS.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The SAN field of the server certificate must include the FQDN or IP address you enter here. Otherwise, StorageGRID will not be able to connect to the KMS or to all servers in a KMS cluster.</p>

4. If you are using a KMS cluster, select the plus sign  to add a hostname for each server in the cluster.
5. Select **Next**.

Step 2 (Upload Server Certificate) of the Add a Key Management Server wizard appears.

## Step 2: Upload Server Certificate

In Step 2 (Upload Server Certificate) of the Add a Key Management Server wizard, you upload the server certificate (or certificate bundle) for the KMS. The server certificate allows the external KMS to authenticate itself to StorageGRID.

### Steps



1. From **Step 2 (Upload Server Certificate)**, browse to the location of the saved server certificate or certificate bundle.

### Add a Key Management Server

1

Enter KMS Details

2

Upload Server Certificate

3

Upload Client Certificates

Upload a server certificate signed by the certificate authority (CA) on the external key management server (KMS) or a certificate bundle. The server certificate allows the KMS to authenticate itself to StorageGRID.

Server Certificate ?

Browse

Cancel

Back

Next

2. Upload the certificate file.


The server certificate metadata appears.



## Add a Key Management Server



Upload a server certificate signed by the certificate authority (CA) on the external key management server (KMS) or a certificate bundle. The server certificate allows the KMS to authenticate itself to StorageGRID.

Server Certificate   k170vCA.pem

### Server Certificate Metadata

**Server DN:** /C=US/ST=MD/L=Belcamp/O=Gemalto/CN=KeySecure Root CA  
**Serial Number:** 71:CD:6D:72:53:B5:6D:0A:8C:69:13:0D:4D:D7:81:0E  
**Issue DN:** /C=US/ST=MD/L=Belcamp/O=Gemalto/CN=KeySecure Root CA  
**Issued On:** 2020-10-15T21:12:45.000Z  
**Expires On:** 2030-10-13T21:12:45.000Z  
**SHA-1 Fingerprint:** EE:E4:6E:17:86:DF:56:B4:F5:AF:A2:3C:BD:56:6B:10:DB:B2:5A:79

Cancel

Back

Next



If you uploaded a certificate bundle, the metadata for each certificate appears on its own tab.

3. Select **Next**.

Step 3 (Upload Client Certificates) of the Add a Key Management Server wizard appears.

### Step 3: Upload Client Certificates

In Step 3 (Upload Client Certificates) of the Add a Key Management Server wizard, you upload the client certificate and the client certificate private key. The client certificate allows StorageGRID to authenticate itself to the KMS.

#### Steps

1. From **Step 3 (Upload Client Certificates)**, browse to the location of the client certificate.



## Add a Key Management Server



Upload the client certificate and the client certificate private key. The client certificate is issued to StorageGRID by the external key management server (KMS), and it allows StorageGRID to authenticate itself to the KMS.

Client Certificate ?

Browse

Client Certificate Private Key ?

Browse

Cancel

Back

Save

2. Upload the client certificate file.

The client certificate metadata appears.

3. Browse to the location of the private key for the client certificate.

4. Upload the private key file.

The metadata for the client certificate and the client certificate private key appear.



## Add a Key Management Server



Upload the client certificate and the client certificate private key. The client certificate is issued to StorageGRID by the external key management server (KMS), and it allows StorageGRID to authenticate itself to the KMS.

Client Certificate ?

Browse

k170vClientCert.pem

**Server DN:** /CN=admin/UID=  
**Serial Number:** 7D:5A:8A:27:02:40:C8:F5:19:A1:28:22:E7:D6:E2:EB  
**Issue DN:** /C=US/ST=MD/L=Belcamp/O=Gemalto/CN=KeySecure Root CA  
**Issued On:** 2020-10-15T23:31:49.000Z  
**Expires On:** 2022-10-15T23:31:49.000Z  
**SHA-1 Fingerprint:** A7:10:AC:39:85:42:80:8F:FF:62:AD:A1:BD:CF:4C:90:F3:E9:36:69

Client Certificate Private Key ?

Browse

k170vClientKey.pem

Cancel

Back

Save

### 5. Select **Save**.

The connections between the key management server and the appliance nodes are tested. If all connections are valid and the correct key is found on the KMS, the new key management server is added to the table on the Key Management Server page.



Immediately after you add a KMS, the certificate status on the Key Management Server page appears as Unknown. It might take StorageGRID as long as 30 minutes to get the actual status of each certificate. You must refresh your web browser to see the current status.

### 6. If an error message appears when you select **Save**, review the message details and then select **OK**.

For example, you might receive a 422: Unprocessable Entity error if a connection test failed.

### 7. If you need to save the current configuration without testing the external connection, select **Force Save**.



## Add a Key Management Server



Upload the client certificate and the client certificate private key. The client certificate is issued to StorageGRID by the external key management server (KMS), and it allows StorageGRID to authenticate itself to the KMS.

Client Certificate ?

Browse

k170vClientCert.pem

**Server DN:** /CN=admin/UID=  
**Serial Number:** 7D:5A:8A:27:02:40:C8:F5:19:A1:28:22:E7:D6:E2:EB  
**Issue DN:** /C=US/ST=MD/L=Belcamp/O=Gemalto/CN=KeySecure Root CA  
**Issued On:** 2020-10-15T23:31:49.000Z  
**Expires On:** 2022-10-15T23:31:49.000Z  
**SHA-1 Fingerprint:** A7:10:AC:39:85:42:80:8F:FF:62:AD:A1:BD:CF:4C:90:F3:E9:36:69

Client Certificate Private Key ?

Browse

k170vClientKey.pem

Select **Force Save** to save this KMS without testing the external connections. If there is an issue with the configuration, you might not be able to reboot any FDE-enabled appliance nodes at the affected site, and you might lose access to your data.

Cancel

Back

Force Save

Save



Selecting **Force Save** saves the KMS configuration, but it does not test the external connection from each appliance to that KMS. If there is an issue with the configuration, you might not be able to reboot appliance nodes that have node encryption enabled at the affected site. You might lose access to your data until the issues are resolved.

8. Review the confirmation warning, and select **OK** if you are sure you want to force save the configuration.

### Warning

Confirm force-saving the KMS configuration

Are you sure you want to save this KMS without testing the external connections?

If there is an issue with the configuration, you might not be able to reboot any appliance nodes with node encryption enabled at the affected site, and you might lose access to your data.

Cancel

OK



The KMS configuration is saved but the connection to the KMS is not tested.

## Viewing KMS details

You can view information about each key management server (KMS) in your StorageGRID system, including the current status of the server and client certificates.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Key Management Server**.

The Key Management Server page appears. The Configuration Details tab shows any key management servers that are configured.

#### Key Management Server

If your StorageGRID system includes appliance nodes with node encryption enabled, you can use an external key management server (KMS) to manage the encryption keys that protect your StorageGRID at rest.

Configuration Details

Encrypted Nodes

You can configure more than one KMS (or KMS cluster) to manage the encryption keys for appliance nodes. For example, you can configure one default KMS to manage the keys for all appliance nodes within a group of sites and a second KMS to manage the keys for the appliance nodes at a particular site.

Before adding a KMS:

- Ensure that the KMS is KMIP-compliant.
- Configure StorageGRID as a client in the KMS.
- Enable node encryption for each appliance during appliance installation. You cannot enable node encryption after an appliance is added to the grid and you cannot use a KMS for appliances that do not have node encryption enabled.

For complete instructions, see [administering StorageGRID](#).

+ Create Edit Remove

KMS Display Name ?	Key Name ?	Manages keys for ?	Hostname ?	Certificate Status ?
Default KMS	test	Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)	10.96.99.164	✓ All certificates are valid

2. Review the information in the table for each KMS.

Field	Description
KMS Display Name	The descriptive name of the KMS.
Key Name	The key alias for the StorageGRID client in the KMS.
Manages keys for	The StorageGRID site associated with the KMS.  This field displays the name of a specific StorageGRID site or <b>Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)</b> .



Field	Description
Hostname	<p>The fully qualified domain name or IP address of the KMS.</p> <p>If there is a cluster of two key management servers, the fully qualified domain name or IP address of both servers are listed. If there are more than two key management servers in a cluster, the fully qualified domain name or IP address of the first KMS is listed along with the number of additional key management servers in the cluster.</p> <p>For example: 10.10.10.10 and 10.10.10.11 or 10.10.10.10 and 2 others.</p> <p>To view all hostnames in a cluster, select a KMS and then select <b>Edit</b>.</p>
Certificate Status	<p>Current state of the server certificate, optional CA certificate, and the client certificate: valid, expired, nearing expiration, or unknown.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It might take StorageGRID as long as 30 minutes to get updates to the certificate status. You must refresh your web browser to see the current values.</p>

- If the Certificate Status is Unknown, wait up to 30 minutes and then refresh your web browser.



Immediately after you add a KMS, the certificate status on the Key Management Server page appears as Unknown. It might take StorageGRID as long as 30 minutes to get the actual status of each certificate. You must refresh your web browser to see the actual status.

- If the Certificate Status column indicates that a certificate has expired or is nearing expiration, address the issue as soon as possible.

See the recommended actions for the **KMS CA certificate expiration**, **KMS client certificate expiration**, and **KMS server certificate expiration** alerts in the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID.



You must address any certificate issues as soon as possible to maintain data access.

## Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

## Viewing encrypted nodes

You can view information about the appliance nodes in your StorageGRID system that have the **Node Encryption** setting enabled.



## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Key Management Server**.

The Key Management Server page appears. The Configuration Details tab shows any key management servers that have been configured.

### Key Management Server

If your StorageGRID system includes appliance nodes with node encryption enabled, you can use an external key management server (KMS) to manage the encryption keys that protect your StorageGRID at rest.

Configuration Details

Encrypted Nodes

You can configure more than one KMS (or KMS cluster) to manage the encryption keys for appliance nodes. For example, you can configure one default KMS to manage the keys for all appliance nodes within a group of sites and a second KMS to manage the keys for the appliance nodes at a particular site.

Before adding a KMS:

- Ensure that the KMS is KMIP-compliant.
- Configure StorageGRID as a client in the KMS.
- Enable node encryption for each appliance during appliance installation. You cannot enable node encryption after an appliance is added to the grid and you cannot use a KMS for appliances that do not have node encryption enabled.

For complete instructions, see [administering StorageGRID](#).

+ Create

Edit

Remove

KMS Display Name ?	Key Name ?	Manages keys for ?	Hostname ?	Certificate Status ?
Default KMS	test	Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)	10.96.99.164	✓ All certificates are valid

2. From the top of the page, select the **Encrypted Nodes** tab.

### Key Management Server

If your StorageGRID system includes appliance nodes with Full Disk Encryption (FDE) enabled, you can use an external key management server (KMS) to manage the encryption keys that protect your StorageGRID data at rest.

Configuration Details

Encrypted Nodes

You can configure more than one KMS (or KMS cluster) to manage the encryption keys for appliance nodes. For example, you can configure one default KMS to manage the keys for all appliance nodes within a group of sites and a second KMS to manage the keys for the appliance nodes at a particular site.

The Encrypted Nodes tab lists the appliance nodes in your StorageGRID system that have the **Node Encryption** setting enabled.

Configuration Details

Encrypted Nodes

Review the KMS status for all appliance nodes that have node encryption enabled. Address any issues immediately to ensure your data is fully protected. If no KMS exists for a site, select Configuration Details and add a KMS.

Nodes with Encryption Enabled

Node Name	Node Type	Site	KMS Display Name ?	Key UID ?	Status ?
SGA-010-096-104-67	Storage Node	Data Center 1	Default KMS	41b0...5c57	✓ Connected to KMS (2021-03-12 10:59:32 MST)

3. Review the information in the table for each appliance node.

Column	Description
Node Name	The name of the appliance node.



Column	Description
Node Type	The type of node: Storage, Admin, or Gateway.
Site	The name of the StorageGRID site where the node is installed.
KMS Display Name	<p>The descriptive name of the KMS used for the node.</p> <p>If no KMS is listed, select the Configuration Details tab to add a KMS.</p> <p><a href="#">Adding a key management server (KMS)</a></p>
Key UID	<p>The unique ID of the encryption key used to encrypt and decrypt data on the appliance node. To view an entire key UID, hover your cursor over the cell.</p> <p>A dash (--) indicates the key UID is unknown, possibly because of a connection issue between the appliance node and the KMS.</p>
Status	<p>The status of the connection between the KMS and the appliance node. If the node is connected, the timestamp updates every 30 minutes. It can take several minutes for the connection status to update after the KMS configuration changes.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must refresh your web browser to see the new values.</p>

- If the Status column indicates a KMS issue, address the issue immediately.

During normal KMS operations, the status will be **Connected to KMS**. If a node is disconnected from the grid, the node connection state is shown (Administratively Down or Unknown).

Other status messages correspond to StorageGRID alerts with the same names:

- KMS configuration failed to load
- KMS connectivity error
- KMS encryption key name not found
- KMS encryption key rotation failed
- KMS key failed to decrypt an appliance volume
- KMS is not configured See the recommended actions for these alerts in the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID.



You must address any issues immediately to ensure that your data is fully protected.

## Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

## Editing a key management server (KMS)

You might need to edit the configuration of a key management server, for example, if a



certificate is about to expire.

What you'll need

- You must have reviewed the [considerations and requirements for using a key management server](#).
- If you plan to update the site selected for a KMS, you must have reviewed the [considerations for changing the KMS for a site](#).
- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Key Management Server**.

The Key Management Server page appears and shows all key management servers that have been configured.

Key Management Server

If your StorageGRID system includes appliance nodes with node encryption enabled, you can use an external key management server (KMS) to manage the encryption keys that protect your StorageGRID at rest.

Configuration Details

Encrypted Nodes

You can configure more than one KMS (or KMS cluster) to manage the encryption keys for appliance nodes. For example, you can configure one default KMS to manage the keys for all appliance nodes within a group of sites and a second KMS to manage the keys for the appliance nodes at a particular site.

Before adding a KMS:

- Ensure that the KMS is KMIP-compliant.
- Configure StorageGRID as a client in the KMS.
- Enable node encryption for each appliance during appliance installation. You cannot enable node encryption after an appliance is added to the grid and you cannot use a KMS for appliances that do not have node encryption enabled.

For complete instructions, see [administering StorageGRID](#).

+ Create

Edit

Remove


KMS Display Name ?	Key Name ?	Manages keys for ?	Hostname ?	Certificate Status ?
Default KMS	test	Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)	10.96.99.164	✔ All certificates are valid


2. Select the KMS you want to edit, and select **Edit**.
3. Optionally, update the details in **Step 1 (Enter KMS Details)** of the Edit a Key Management Server wizard.

Field	Description
KMS Display Name	A descriptive name to help you identify this KMS. Must be between 1 and 64 characters.

97



Field	Description
Key Name	<p>The exact key alias for the StorageGRID client in the KMS. Must be between 1 and 255 characters.</p> <p>You only need to edit the key name in rare cases. For example, you must edit the key name if the alias is renamed in the KMS or if all versions of the previous key have been copied to the version history of the new alias.</p> <div>  <p>Never attempt to rotate a key by changing the key name (alias) for the KMS. Instead, rotate the key by updating the key version in the KMS software. StorageGRID requires all previously used key versions (as well as any future ones) to be accessible from the KMS with the same key alias. If you change the key alias for a configured KMS, StorageGRID might not be able to decrypt your data.</p> <p><a href="#">Considerations and requirements for using a key management server</a></p> </div>
Manages keys for	<p>If you are editing a site-specific KMS and you do not already have a default KMS, optionally select <b>Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)</b>. This selection converts a site-specific KMS to the default KMS, which will apply to all sites that do not have a dedicated KMS and to any sites added in an expansion.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you are editing a site-specific KMS, you cannot select another site. If you are editing the default KMS, you cannot select a specific site.</p>
Port	<p>The port the KMS server uses for Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) communications. Defaults to 5696, which is the KMIP standard port.</p>
Hostname	<p>The fully qualified domain name or IP address for the KMS.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The SAN field of the server certificate must include the FQDN or IP address you enter here. Otherwise, StorageGRID will not be able to connect to the KMS or to all servers in a KMS cluster.</p>

- If you are configuring a KMS cluster, select the plus sign  to add a hostname for each server in the cluster.
- Select **Next**.

Step 2 (Upload Server Certificate) of the Edit a Key Management Server wizard appears.

- If you need to replace the server certificate, select **Browse** and upload the new file.
- Select **Next**.



Step 3 (Upload Client Certificates) of the Edit a Key Management Server wizard appears.

8. If you need to replace the client certificate and the client certificate private key, select **Browse** and upload the new files.
9. Select **Save**.

The connections between the key management server and all node-encrypted appliance nodes at the affected sites are tested. If all node connections are valid and the correct key is found on the KMS, the key management server is added to the table on the Key Management Server page.

10. If an error message appears, review the message details, and select **OK**.

For example, you might receive a 422: Unprocessable Entity error if the site you selected for this KMS is already managed by another KMS, or if a connection test failed.

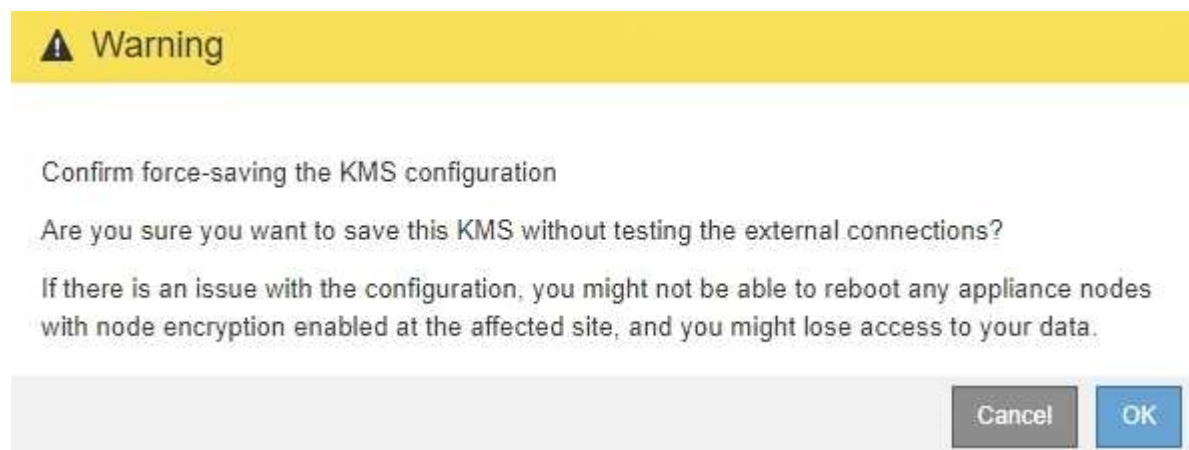
11. If you need to save the current configuration before resolving the connection errors, select **Force Save**.



Selecting **Force Save** saves the KMS configuration, but it does not test the external connection from each appliance to that KMS. If there is an issue with the configuration, you might not be able to reboot appliance nodes that have node encryption enabled at the affected site. You might lose access to your data until the issues are resolved.

The KMS configuration is saved.

12. Review the confirmation warning, and select **OK** if you are sure you want to force save the configuration.



The KMS configuration is saved but the connection to the KMS is not tested.

## Removing a key management server (KMS)

You might want to remove a key management server in some cases. For example, you might want to remove a site-specific KMS if you have decommissioned the site.

### What you'll need

- You must have reviewed the [considerations and requirements for using a key management server](#).
- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.



About this task

You can remove a KMS in these cases:

- You can remove a site-specific KMS if the site has been decommissioned or if the site includes no appliance nodes with node encryption enabled.
- You can remove the default KMS if a site-specific KMS already exists for each site that has appliance nodes with node encryption enabled.

Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Key Management Server**.

The Key Management Server page appears and shows all key management servers that have been configured.

Key Management Server

If your StorageGRID system includes appliance nodes with node encryption enabled, you can use an external key management server (KMS) to manage the encryption keys that protect your StorageGRID at rest.

Configuration Details

Encrypted Nodes

You can configure more than one KMS (or KMS cluster) to manage the encryption keys for appliance nodes. For example, you can configure one default KMS to manage the keys for all appliance nodes within a group of sites and a second KMS to manage the keys for the appliance nodes at a particular site.

Before adding a KMS:

- Ensure that the KMS is KMIP-compliant.
- Configure StorageGRID as a client in the KMS.
- Enable node encryption for each appliance during appliance installation. You cannot enable node encryption after an appliance is added to the grid and you cannot use a KMS for appliances that do not have node encryption enabled.

For complete instructions, see [administering StorageGRID](#).

+ Create

Edit

Remove

KMS Display Name ?	Key Name ?	Manages keys for ?	Hostname ?	Certificate Status ?
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default KMS	test	Sites not managed by another KMS (default KMS)	10.96.99.164	✔ All certificates are valid

2. Select the radio button for the KMS you want to remove, and select **Remove**.
3. Review the considerations in the warning dialog.

Warning

Delete KMS Configuration

You can only remove a KMS in these cases:

- You are removing a site-specific KMS for a site that has no appliance nodes with node encryption enabled.
- You are removing the default KMS, but a site-specific KMS already exists for each site with node encryption.

Are you sure you want to delete the Default KMS KMS configuration?

Cancel

OK

100



4. Select **OK**.

The KMS configuration is removed.

## Managing tenants

As a grid administrator, you create and manage the tenant accounts that S3 and Swift clients use to store and retrieve objects, monitor storage usage, and manage the actions that clients are able to perform using your StorageGRID system.

### What tenant accounts are

Tenant accounts allow client applications that use the Simple Storage Service (S3) REST API or the Swift REST API to store and retrieve objects on StorageGRID.

Each tenant account supports the use of a single protocol, which you specify when you create the account. To store and retrieve objects to a StorageGRID system with both protocols, you must create two tenant accounts: one for S3 buckets and objects, and one for Swift containers and objects. Each tenant account has its own account ID, authorized groups and users, buckets or containers, and objects.

Optionally, you can create additional tenant accounts if you want to segregate the objects stored on your system by different entities. For example, you might set up multiple tenant accounts in either of these use cases:

- **Enterprise use case:** If you are administering a StorageGRID system in an enterprise application, you might want to segregate the grid's object storage by the different departments in your organization. In this case, you could create tenant accounts for the Marketing department, the Customer Support department, the Human Resources department, and so on.



If you use the S3 client protocol, you can simply use S3 buckets and bucket policies to segregate objects between the departments in an enterprise. You do not need to use tenant accounts. See the instructions for implementing S3 client applications for more information.

- **Service provider use case:** If you are administering a StorageGRID system as a service provider, you can segregate the grid's object storage by the different entities that will lease the storage on your grid. In this case, you would create tenant accounts for Company A, Company B, Company C, and so on.

### Creating and configuring tenant accounts

When you create a tenant account, you specify the following information:

- Display name for the tenant account.
- Which client protocol will be used by the tenant account (S3 or Swift).
- For S3 tenant accounts: Whether the tenant account has permission to use platform services with S3 buckets. If you permit tenant accounts to use platform services, you must ensure that the grid is configured to support their use. See “Managing platform services.”
- Optionally, a storage quota for the tenant account—the maximum number of gigabytes, terabytes, or petabytes available for the tenant's objects. If the quota is exceeded, the tenant cannot create new objects.





A tenant's storage quota represents a logical amount (object size), not a physical amount (size on disk).

- If identity federation is enabled for the StorageGRID system, which federated group has Root Access permission to configure the tenant account.
- If single sign-on (SSO) is not in use for the StorageGRID system, whether the tenant account will use its own identity source or share the grid's identity source, and the initial password for the tenant's local root user.

After a tenant account is created, you can perform the following tasks:

- **Manage platform services for the grid:** If you enable platform services for tenant accounts, ensure that you understand how platform services messages are delivered and the networking requirements that the use of platform services place on your StorageGRID deployment.
- **Monitor a tenant account's storage usage:** After tenants begin using their accounts, you can use Grid Manager to monitor how much storage each tenant consumes.

If you have set quotas for tenants, you can enable the **Tenant quota usage high** alert to determine if tenants are consuming their quotas. If enabled, this alert is triggered when a tenant has used 90% of its quota. For more information, see the alerts reference in the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID.

- **Configure client operations:** You can configure if some types of client operations are forbidden.

## Configuring S3 tenants

After an S3 tenant account is created, tenant users can access the Tenant Manager to perform tasks such as the following:

- Setting up identity federation (unless the identity source is shared with the grid) and creating local groups and users
- Managing S3 access keys
- Creating and managing S3 buckets
- Monitoring storage usage
- Using platform services (if enabled)



S3 tenant users can create and manage S3 access key and buckets with the Tenant Manager, but they must use an S3 client application to ingest and manage objects.

## Configuring Swift tenants

After a Swift tenant account is created, the tenant's root user can access the Tenant Manager to perform tasks such as the following:

- Setting up identity federation (unless the identity source is shared with the grid), and creating local groups and users
- Monitoring storage usage





Swift users must have the Root Access permission to access the Tenant Manager. However, the Root Access permission does not allow users to authenticate into the Swift REST API to create containers and ingest objects. Users must have the Swift Administrator permission to authenticate into the Swift REST API.

## Related information

[Use a tenant account](#)

## Creating a tenant account

You must create at least one tenant account to control access to the storage in your StorageGRID system.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### Steps

1. Select **Tenants**.

The Tenant Accounts page appears and lists any existing tenant accounts.

#### Tenant Accounts

View information for each tenant account.

**Note:** Depending on the timing of ingests, network connectivity, and node status, the usage data shown might be out of date. To view more recent values, select the tenant and select **View Details**.

The screenshot shows the 'Tenant Accounts' page. At the top, there is a toolbar with buttons: '+ Create', 'View details', 'Edit', 'Actions', and 'Export to CSV'. To the right of these buttons is a search bar labeled 'Search by Name/ID'. Below the toolbar is a table with the following columns: 'Display Name', 'Space Used', 'Quota Utilization', 'Quota', 'Object Count', and 'Sign in'. Each column header has a small icon indicating sorting or filtering options. The table body is empty and contains the text 'No results found.' At the bottom right of the page, there is a 'Show 20 rows per page' dropdown menu.

2. Select **Create**.

The Create Tenant Account page appears. The fields included on the page depend on whether single sign-on (SSO) has been enabled for the StorageGRID system.

- If SSO is not being used, the Create Tenant Account page looks like this.



## Create Tenant Account

### Tenant Details

Display Name

Protocol ☐ S3 ☐ Swift

Storage Quota (optional)  GB ▾

### Authentication [?](#)

Configure how the tenant account will be accessed.

Uses Own Identity Source ☒

Specify a password for the tenant's local root user.

Username root

Password

Confirm Password

Cancel

Save

- If SSO is enabled, the Create Tenant Account page looks like this.



## Create Tenant Account

### Tenant Details

Display Name

Protocol ☒ S3 ☐ Swift

Allow Platform Services ☒

Storage Quota (optional)

### Authentication

Because single sign-on is enabled, the tenant must use the Grid Manager's identity federation service, and no local users can sign in. You must select an existing federated group to have the initial Root Access permission for the tenant.

Uses Own Identity Source ☐

Single sign-on is enabled. The tenant cannot use its own identity source.

Root Access Group

Cancel

Save

### Related information

[Using identity federation](#)

[Configuring single sign-on](#)

### Creating a tenant account if StorageGRID is not using SSO

When you create a tenant account, you specify a name, a client protocol, and optionally a storage quota. If StorageGRID is not using single sign-on (SSO), you must also specify whether the tenant account will use its own identity source and configure the initial password for the tenant's local root user.

### About this task

If the tenant account will use the identity source that was configured for the Grid Manager, and you want to grant Root Access permission for the tenant account to a federated group, you must have imported that federated group into the Grid Manager. You do not need to assign any Grid Manager permissions to this admin group. See the instructions for [managing admin groups](#).

### Steps

1. In the **Display Name** text box, enter a display name for this tenant account.

Display names do not need to be unique. When the tenant account is created, it receives a unique,



numeric Account ID.

2. Select the client protocol that will be used by this tenant account, either **S3** or **Swift**.
3. For S3 tenant accounts, keep the **Allow Platform Services** check box selected unless you do not want this tenant to use platform services for S3 buckets.

If platform services are enabled, a tenant can use features, such as CloudMirror replication, that access external services. You might want to disable the use of these features to limit the amount of network bandwidth or other resources a tenant consumes. See “Managing platform services.”

4. In the **Storage Quota** text box, optionally enter the maximum number of gigabytes, terabytes, or petabytes that you want to make available for this tenant’s objects. Then, select the units from the drop-down list.

Leave this field blank if you want this tenant to have an unlimited quota.



A tenant’s storage quota represents a logical amount (object size), not a physical amount (size on disk). ILM copies and erasure coding do not contribute to the amount of quota used. If the quota is exceeded, the tenant account cannot create new objects.



To monitor each tenant account’s storage usage, select **Usage**. Tenant accounts can also monitor their own storage usage from the Dashboard in the Tenant Manager or with the Tenant Management API. Note that a tenant’s storage usage values might become out of date if nodes are isolated from other nodes in the grid. The totals will be updated when network connectivity is restored.

5. If the tenant will manage its own groups and users, follow these steps.

- a. Select the **Uses Own Identity Source** check box (default).



If this check box is selected and you want to use identity federation for tenant groups and users, the tenant must configure its own identity source. See the instructions for using tenant accounts.

- b. Specify a password for the tenant’s local root user.

6. If the tenant will use the groups and users configured for the Grid Manager, follow these steps.

- a. Unselect the **Uses Own Identity Source** check box.

- b. Do either or both of the following:

- In the Root Access Group field, select an existing federated group from the Grid Manager that should have the initial Root Access permission for the tenant.



If you have adequate permissions, the existing federated groups from the Grid Manager are listed when you click the field. Otherwise, enter the group’s unique name.

- Specify a password for the tenant’s local root user.

7. Click **Save**.

The tenant account is created.


8. Optionally, access the new tenant. Otherwise, go to the step for [accessing the tenant later](#).



If you are...	Do this...
Accessing the Grid Manager on a restricted port	<p>Click <b>Restricted</b> to learn more about accessing this tenant account.</p> <p>The URL for the Tenant Manager has this format:</p> <pre>https://FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP:port/?accountId=20-digit-account-id/</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP</i> is a fully qualified domain name or the IP address of an Admin Node</li> <li>• <i>port</i> is the tenant-only port</li> <li>• <i>20-digit-account-id</i> is the tenant's unique account ID</li> </ul>
Accessing the Grid Manager on port 443 but you did not set a password for the local root user	Click <b>Sign In</b> , and enter the credentials for a user in the Root Access federated group.
Accessing the Grid Manager on port 443 and you set a password for the local root user	Go to the next step to <a href="#">sign in as root</a> .

9. Sign in to the tenant as root:
  - a. From the Configure Tenant Account dialog box, click the **Sign in as root** button.

### Configure Tenant Account

 Account S3 tenant created successfully.


If you are ready to configure this tenant account, sign in as the tenant's root user. Then, click the links below.

Sign in as root

- [Buckets](#) - Create and manage buckets.
- [Groups](#) - Manage user groups, and assign group permissions.
- [Users](#) - Manage local users, and assign users to groups.

Finish

A green check mark appears on the button, indicating that you are now signed in to the tenant account as the root user.

Sign in as root




- b. Click the links to configure the tenant account.

Each link opens the corresponding page in the Tenant Manager. To complete the page, see the instructions for using tenant accounts.

- c. Click **Finish**.

10. To access the tenant later:

If you are using...	Do one of these...
Port 443	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• From the Grid Manager, select <b>Tenants</b>, and click <b>Sign in</b> to the right of the tenant name.</li><li>• Enter the tenant's URL in a web browser:  <code>https://<i>FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP</i>?accountId=20-digit-account-id/</code><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◦ <i>FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP</i> is a fully qualified domain name or the IP address of an Admin Node</li><li>◦ <i>20-digit-account-id</i> is the tenant's unique account ID</li></ul></li></ul>
A restricted port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• From the Grid Manager, select <b>Tenants</b>, and click <b>Restricted</b>.</li><li>• Enter the tenant's URL in a web browser:  <code>https://<i>FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP</i>:<i>port</i>?accountId=20-digit-account-id</code><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◦ <i>FQDN_or_Admin_Node_IP</i> is a fully qualified domain name or the IP address of an Admin Node</li><li>◦ <i>port</i> is the tenant-only restricted port</li><li>◦ <i>20-digit-account-id</i> is the tenant's unique account ID</li></ul></li></ul>

## Related information

[Controlling access through firewalls](#)

[Managing platform services for S3 tenant accounts](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

## Creating a tenant account if SSO is enabled

When you create a tenant account, you specify a name, a client protocol, and optionally a storage quota. If single sign-on (SSO) is enabled for StorageGRID, you also specify which federated group has Root Access permission to configure the tenant account.

## Steps

1. In the **Display Name** text box, enter a display name for this tenant account.



Display names do not need to be unique. When the tenant account is created, it receives a unique, numeric Account ID.

2. Select the client protocol that will be used by this tenant account, either **S3** or **Swift**.
3. For S3 tenant accounts, keep the **Allow Platform Services** check box selected unless you do not want this tenant to use platform services for S3 buckets.

If platform services are enabled, a tenant can use features, such as CloudMirror replication, that access external services. You might want to disable the use of these features to limit the amount of network bandwidth or other resources a tenant consumes. See “Managing platform services.”

4. In the **Storage Quota** text box, optionally enter the maximum number of gigabytes, terabytes, or petabytes that you want to make available for this tenant’s objects. Then, select the units from the drop-down list.

Leave this field blank if you want this tenant to have an unlimited quota.



A tenant’s storage quota represents a logical amount (object size), not a physical amount (size on disk). ILM copies and erasure coding do not contribute to the amount of quota used. If the quota is exceeded, the tenant account cannot create new objects.



To monitor each tenant account’s storage usage, select **Usage**. Tenant accounts can also monitor their own storage usage from the Dashboard in the Tenant Manager or with the Tenant Management API. Note that a tenant’s storage usage values might become out of date if nodes are isolated from other nodes in the grid. The totals will be updated when network connectivity is restored.

5. Notice that the **Uses Own Identity Source** check box is unchecked and disabled.

Because SSO is enabled, the tenant must use the identity source that was configured for the Grid Manager. No local users can sign in.

6. In the **Root Access Group** field, select an existing federated group from the Grid Manager to have the initial Root Access permission for the tenant.



If you have adequate permissions, the existing federated groups from the Grid Manager are listed when you click the field. Otherwise, enter the group’s unique name.

7. Click **Save**.

The tenant account is created. The Tenant Accounts page appears, and it includes a row for the new tenant.

8. If you are a user in the Root Access group, optionally click the **Sign in** link for the new tenant to immediately access the Tenant Manager, where you can configure the tenant. Otherwise, provide the URL for the **Sign in** link to the tenant account’s administrator. (The URL for a tenant is the fully qualified domain name or IP address of any Admin Node, followed by `/?accountId=20-digit-account-id`.)



An access denied message is displayed if you click **Sign in**, but you do not belong to the Root Access group for the tenant account.

## Related information

[Configuring single sign-on](#)



## Changing the password for a tenant's local root user

You might need to change the password for a tenant's local root user if the root user is locked out of the account.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

If single sign-on (SSO) is enabled for your StorageGRID system, the local root user cannot sign in to the tenant account. To perform root user tasks, users must belong to a federated group that has the Root Access permission for the tenant.

### Steps

1. Select **Tenants**.

The Tenant Accounts page appears and lists all existing tenant accounts.

#### Tenant Accounts

View information for each tenant account.

**Note:** Depending on the timing of ingests, network connectivity, and node status, the usage data shown might be out of date. To view more recent values, select the tenant and select **View Details**.

<div> <span>+ Create</span> <span>View details</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Actions</span> <span>Export to CSV</span> </div> <div>Search by Name/ID <span>Q</span></div>						
	Display Name <span>?</span> <span>↑</span>	Space Used <span>?</span> <span>↑</span>	Quota Utilization <span>?</span> <span>↑</span>	Quota <span>?</span> <span>↑</span>	Object Count <span>?</span> <span>↑</span>	Sign in <span>?</span>
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Account01	500.00 KB	0.00%	20.00 GB	100	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account02	2.50 MB	0.01%	30.00 GB	500	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account03	605.00 MB	4.03%	15.00 GB	31,000	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account04	1.00 GB	10.00%	10.00 GB	200,000	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account05	0 bytes	—	Unlimited	0	<span>Sign in</span>

Show 20 rows per page

2. Select the tenant account you want to edit.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. Use the search box to search for a tenant account by display name or tenant ID.

The View Details, Edit, and Actions buttons become enabled.

3. From the **Actions** drop-down, select **Change Root Password**.



## Change Root User Password - Account03

Username	root
New Password	<input type="password" value="••••••••"/>
Confirm New Password	<input type="password"/>

Cancel Save

- Enter the new password for the tenant account.
- Select **Save**.

### Related information

[Controlling administrator access to StorageGRID](#)

## Editing a tenant account

You can edit a tenant account to change the display name, change the identity source setting, allow or disallow platform services, or enter a storage quota.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### Steps

- Select **Tenants**.

The Tenant Accounts page appears and lists all existing tenant accounts.

### Tenant Accounts

View information for each tenant account.

**Note:** Depending on the timing of ingests, network connectivity, and node status, the usage data shown might be out of date. To view more recent values, select the tenant and select **View Details**.

<div><span>+ Create</span> <span>View details</span> <span>Edit</span> <span>Actions</span> <span>Export to CSV</span></div> <div>Search by Name/ID <span>Q</span></div>						
	Display Name <span>?</span> <span>^</span>	Space Used <span>?</span> <span>↑↓</span>	Quota Utilization <span>?</span> <span>↑↓</span>	Quota <span>?</span> <span>↑↓</span>	Object Count <span>?</span> <span>↑↓</span>	Sign in <span>?</span>
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Account01	500.00 KB	0.00%	20.00 GB	100	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account02	2.50 MB	0.01%	30.00 GB	500	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account03	605.00 MB	4.03%	15.00 GB	31,000	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account04	1.00 GB	10.00%	10.00 GB	200,000	<span>Sign in</span>
<input type="radio"/>	Account05	0 bytes	—	Unlimited	0	<span>Sign in</span>

Show 20 rows per page



2. Select the tenant account you want to edit.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. Use the search box to search for a tenant account by display name or tenant ID.

3. Select **Edit**.

The Edit Tenant Account page appears. This example is for a grid that does not use single sign-on (SSO). This tenant account has not configured its own identity source.

## Edit Tenant Account

### Tenant Details

Display Name

Account03

Allow Platform Services

☒

Storage Quota (optional)

15

GB

▼

Uses Own Identity Source

☒

Cancel

Save

4. Change the values for the fields as required.

- a. Change the display name for this tenant account.
- b. Change the setting of the **Allow Platform Services** check box to determine whether the tenant account can use platform services for their S3 buckets.



If you disable platform services for a tenant who is already using them, the services that they have configured for their S3 buckets will stop working. No error message is sent to the tenant. For example, if the tenant has configured CloudMirror replication for an S3 bucket, they can still store objects in the bucket, but copies of those objects will no longer be made in the external S3 bucket that they have configured as an endpoint.

- c. For **Storage Quota**, change the number of maximum number of gigabytes, terabytes, or petabytes available for this tenant's objects, or leave the field blank if you want this tenant to have an unlimited quota.

A tenant's storage quota represents a logical amount (object size), not a physical amount (size on disk). ILM copies and erasure coding do not contribute to the amount of quota used.



To monitor each tenant account's storage usage, select **Usage**. Tenant accounts can also monitor their own usage from the Dashboard in the Tenant Manager or with the Tenant Management API. Note that a tenant's storage usage values might become out of date if nodes are isolated from other nodes in the grid. The totals will be updated when network connectivity is restored.

- d. Change the setting of the **Uses Own Identity Source** check box to determine whether the tenant account will use its own identity source or the identity source that was configured for the Grid Manager.





If the **Uses Own Identity Source** check box is:

- Disabled and checked, the tenant has already enabled its own identity source. A tenant must disable its identity source before it can use the identity source that was configured for the Grid Manager.
- Disabled and unchecked, SSO is enabled for the StorageGRID system. The tenant must use the identity source that was configured for the Grid Manager.

5. Select **Save**.

#### Related information

[Managing platform services for S3 tenant accounts](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

## Deleting a tenant account

You can delete a tenant account if you want to permanently remove the tenant's access to the system.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must have removed all buckets (S3), containers (Swift), and objects associated with the tenant account.

#### Steps

1. Select **Tenants**.
2. Select the tenant account you want to delete.

If your system includes more than 20 items, you can specify how many rows are shown on each page at one time. Use the search box to search for a tenant account by display name or tenant ID.

3. From the **Actions** drop-down, select **Remove**.
4. Select **OK**.

#### Related information

[Controlling administrator access to StorageGRID](#)

## Managing platform services for S3 tenant accounts

If you enable platform services for S3 tenant accounts, you must configure your grid so that tenants can access the external resources necessary to use these services.

- [What platform services are](#)
- [Networking and ports for platform services](#)
- [Per-site delivery of platform services messages](#)
- [Troubleshooting platform services](#)



## What platform services are

Platform services include CloudMirror replication, event notifications, and the search integration service.

These services allow tenants to use the following functionality with their S3 buckets:

- **CloudMirror replication:** The StorageGRID CloudMirror replication service is used to mirror specific objects from a StorageGRID bucket to a specified external destination.

For example, you might use CloudMirror replication to mirror specific customer records into Amazon S3 and then leverage AWS services to perform analytics on your data.



CloudMirror replication is not supported if the source bucket has S3 Object Lock enabled.

- **Notifications:** Per-bucket event notifications are used to send notifications about specific actions performed on objects to a specified external Amazon Simple Notification Service™ (SNS).

For example, you could configure alerts to be sent to administrators about each object added to a bucket, where the objects represent log files associated with a critical system event.



Although event notification can be configured on a bucket with S3 Object Lock enabled, the S3 Object Lock metadata (including Retain Until Date and Legal Hold status) of the objects will not be included in the notification messages.

- **Search integration service:** The search integration service is used to send S3 object metadata to a specified Elasticsearch index where the metadata can be searched or analyzed using the external service.

For example, you could configure your buckets to send S3 object metadata to a remote Elasticsearch service. You could then use Elasticsearch to perform searches across buckets, and perform sophisticated analyses of patterns present in your object metadata.



Although Elasticsearch integration can be configured on a bucket with S3 Object Lock enabled, the S3 Object Lock metadata (including Retain Until Date and Legal Hold status) of the objects will not be included in the notification messages.

Platform services give tenants the ability to use external storage resources, notification services, and search or analysis services with their data. Because the target location for platform services is typically external to your StorageGRID deployment, you must decide if you want to permit tenants to use these services. If you do, you must enable the use of platform services when you create or edit tenant accounts. You must also configure your network such that the platform services messages that tenants generate can reach their destinations.

## Recommendations for using platform services

Before using platform services, you must be aware of the following recommendations:

- You should not use more than 100 active tenants with S3 requests requiring CloudMirror replication, notifications, and search integration. Having more than 100 active tenants can result in slower S3 client performance.
- If an S3 bucket in the StorageGRID system has both versioning and CloudMirror replication enabled, you should also enable S3 bucket versioning for the destination endpoint. This allows CloudMirror replication to generate similar object versions on the endpoint.



## Related information

[Use a tenant account](#)

[Configuring Storage proxy settings](#)

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

## Networking and ports for platform services

If you allow an S3 tenant to use platform services, you must configure networking for the grid to ensure that platform services messages can be delivered to their destinations.

You can enable platform services for an S3 tenant account when you create or update the tenant account. If platform services are enabled, the tenant can create endpoints that serve as a destination for CloudMirror replication, event notifications, or search integration messages from its S3 buckets. These platform services messages are sent from Storage Nodes that run the ADC service to the destination endpoints.

For example, tenants might configure the following types of destination endpoints:

- A locally-hosted Elasticsearch cluster
- A local application that supports receiving Simple Notification Service (SNS) messages
- A locally-hosted S3 bucket on the same or another instance of StorageGRID
- An external endpoint, such as an endpoint on Amazon Web Services.

To ensure that platform services messages can be delivered, you must configure the network or networks containing the ADC Storage Nodes. You must ensure that the following ports can be used to send platform services messages to the destination endpoints.

By default, platform services messages are sent on the following ports:

- **80**: For endpoint URIs that begin with http
- **443**: For endpoint URIs that begin with https

Tenants can specify a different port when they create or edit an endpoint.



If a StorageGRID deployment is used as the destination for CloudMirror replication, replication messages might be received on a port other than 80 or 443. Ensure that the port being used for S3 by the destination StorageGRID deployment is specified in the endpoint.

If you use a non-transparent proxy server, you must also configure Storage proxy settings to allow messages to be sent to external endpoints, such as an endpoint on the internet.

## Related information

[Configuring Storage proxy settings](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

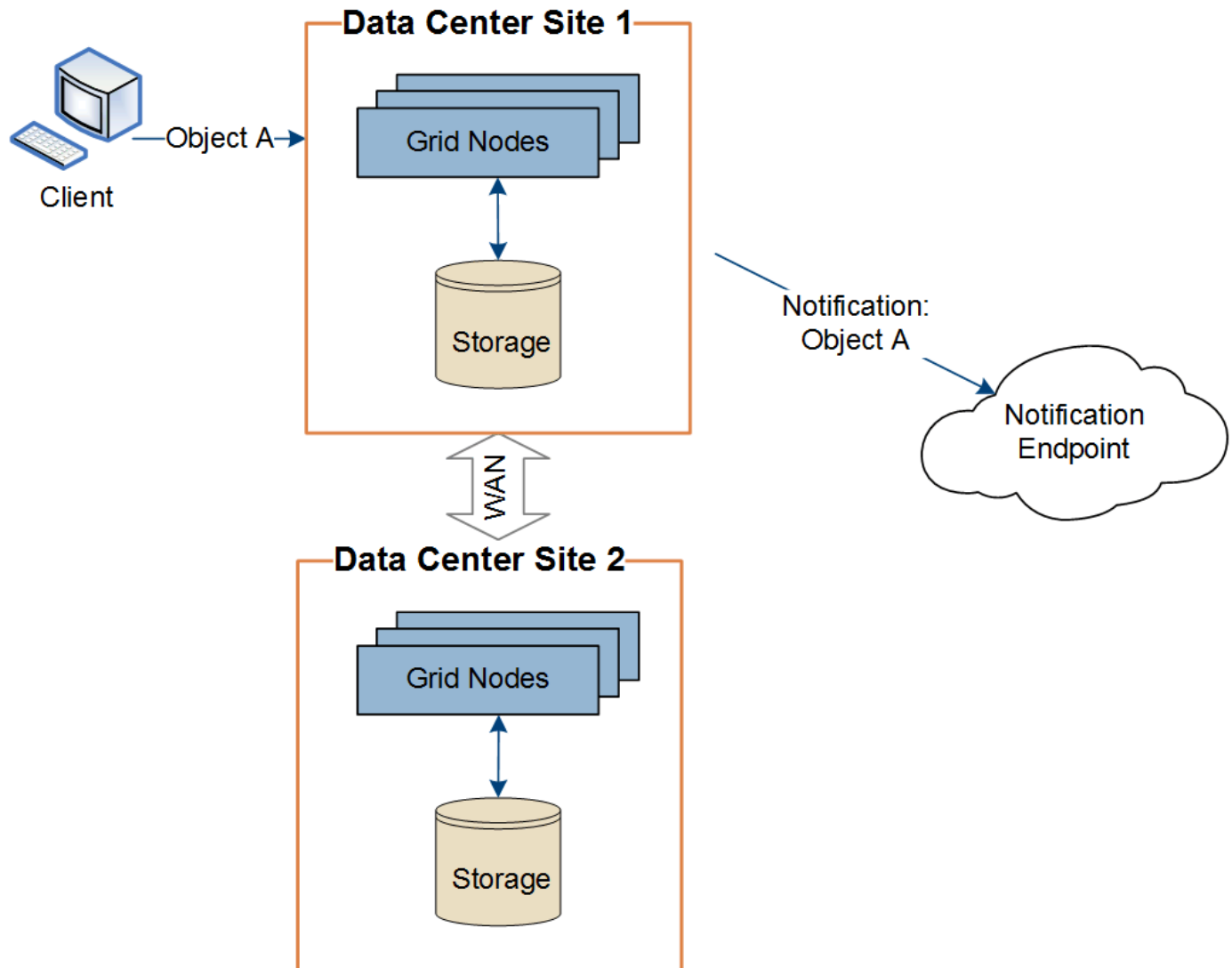
## Per-site delivery of platform services messages

All platform services operations are performed on a per-site basis.

That is, if a tenant uses a client to perform an S3 API Create operation on an object by connecting to a

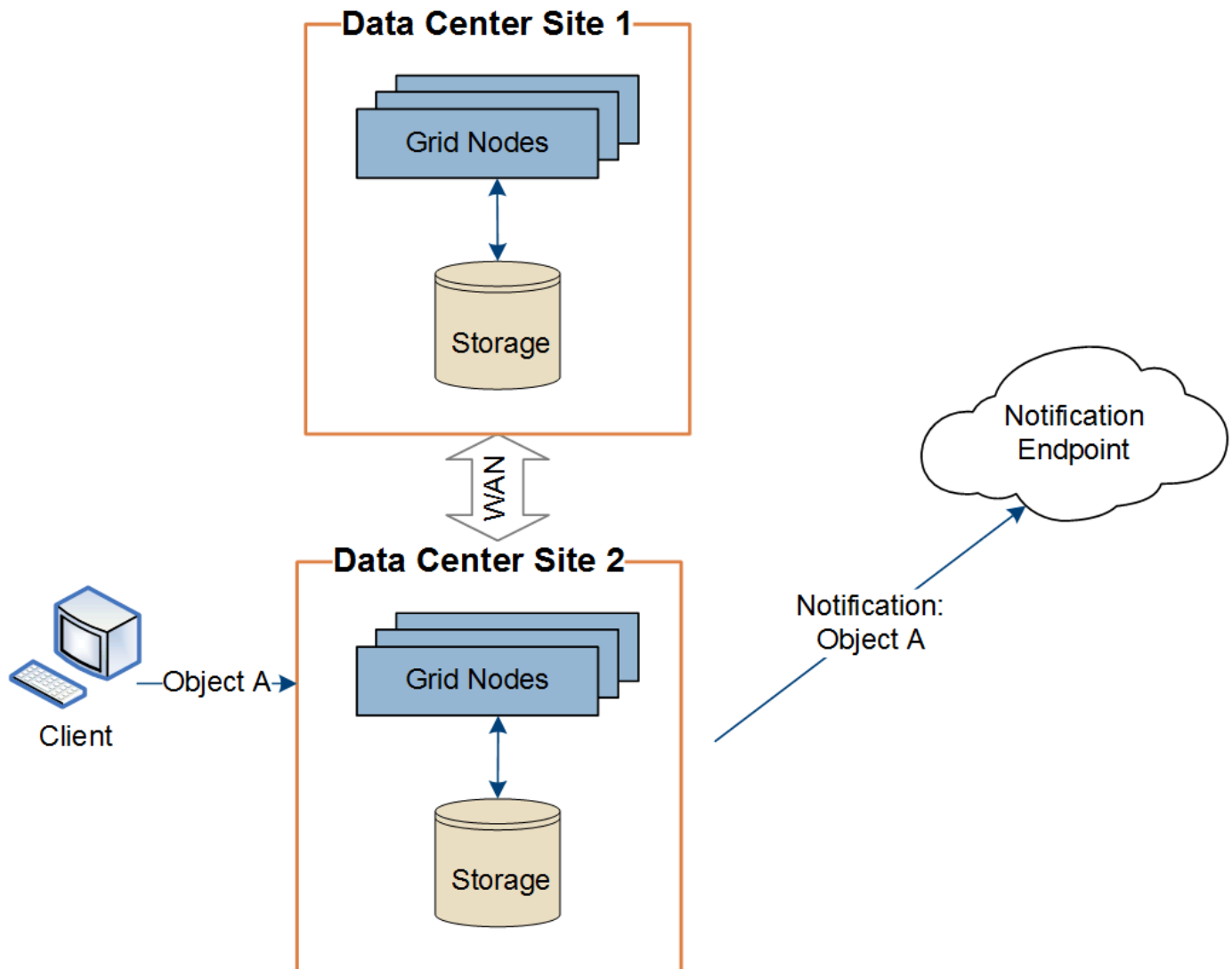


Gateway Node at Data Center Site 1, the notification about that action is triggered and sent from Data Center Site 1.



If the client subsequently performs an S3 API Delete operation on that same object from Data Center Site 2, the notification about the delete action is triggered and sent from Data Center Site 2.





Make sure that the networking at each site is configured such that platform services messages can be delivered to their destinations.

### Troubleshooting platform services

The endpoints used in platform services are created and maintained by tenant users in the Tenant Manager; however, if a tenant has issues configuring or using platform services, you might be able to use the Grid Manager to help resolve the issue.

#### Issues with new endpoints

Before a tenant can use platform services, they must create one or more endpoints using the Tenant Manager. Each endpoint represents an external destination for one platform service, such as a StorageGRID S3 bucket, an Amazon Web Services bucket, a Simple Notification Service topic, or an Elasticsearch cluster hosted locally or on AWS. Each endpoint includes both the location of the external resource and the credentials needed to access that resource.

When a tenant creates an endpoint, the StorageGRID system validates that the endpoint exists and that it can be reached using the credentials that were specified. The connection to the endpoint is validated from one node at each site.



If endpoint validation fails, an error message explains why endpoint validation failed. The tenant user should resolve the issue, then try creating the endpoint again.



Endpoint creation will fail if platform services are not enabled for the tenant account.

### Issues with existing endpoints

If an error occurs when StorageGRID tries to reach an existing endpoint, a message is displayed on the Dashboard in the Tenant Manager.



One or more endpoints have experienced an error and might not be functioning properly. Go to the [Endpoints](#) page to view the error details. The last error occurred 2 hours ago.

Tenant users can go to the Endpoints page to review the most recent error message for each endpoint and to determine how long ago the error occurred. The **Last error** column displays the most recent error message for each endpoint and indicates how long ago the error occurred. Errors that include the icon occurred within the past 7 days.

## Platform services endpoints

A platform services endpoint stores the information StorageGRID needs to use an external resource as a target for a platform service (CloudMirror replication, notifications, or search integration). You must configure an endpoint for each platform service you plan to use.



One or more endpoints have experienced an error. Select the endpoint for more details about the error. Meanwhile, the platform service request will be retried automatically.

5 endpoints

Create endpoint

Delete endpoint

<input type="checkbox"/>	Display name	Last error	Type	URI	URN
<input type="checkbox"/>	my-endpoint-2	2 hours ago	Search	http://10.96.104.30:9200	urn:sgws:es::mydomain/sveloso/_doc
<input type="checkbox"/>	my-endpoint-3	3 days ago	Notifications	http://10.96.104.202:8080/	arn:aws:sns:us-west-2::example1
<input type="checkbox"/>	my-endpoint-5	12 days ago	Notifications	http://10.96.104.202:8080/	arn:aws:sns:us-west-2::example3
<input type="checkbox"/>	my-endpoint-4		Notifications	http://10.96.104.202:8080/	arn:aws:sns:us-west-2::example2
<input type="checkbox"/>	my-endpoint-1		S3 Bucket	http://10.96.104.167:10443	urn:sgws:s3:::bucket1



Some error messages in the **Last error** column might include a logID in parentheses. A grid administrator or technical support can use this ID to locate more detailed information about the error in the bycast.log.

### Issues related to proxy servers

If you have configured a Storage proxy between Storage Nodes and platform service endpoints, errors might occur if your proxy service does not allow messages from StorageGRID. To resolve these issues, check the



settings of your proxy server to ensure that platform service-related messages are not blocked.

### Determining if an error has occurred

If any endpoint errors have occurred within the past 7 days, the Dashboard in the Tenant Manager displays an alert message. You can go the Endpoints page to see more details about the error.

### Client operations fail

Some platform services issues might cause client operations on the S3 bucket to fail. For example, S3 client operations will fail if the internal Replicated State Machine (RSM) service stops, or if there are too many platform services messages queued for delivery.

To check the status of services:

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **site > Storage Node > SSM > Services**.

### Recoverable and unrecoverable endpoint errors

After endpoints have been created, platform service request errors can occur for various reasons. Some errors are recoverable with user intervention. For example, recoverable errors might occur for the following reasons:

- The user's credentials have been deleted or have expired.
- The destination bucket does not exist.
- The notification cannot be delivered.

If StorageGRID encounters a recoverable error, the platform service request will be retried until it succeeds.

Other errors are unrecoverable. For example, an unrecoverable error occurs if the endpoint is deleted.

If StorageGRID encounters an unrecoverable endpoint error, the Total Events (SMTT) alarm is triggered in the Grid Manager. To view the Total Events alarm:

1. Select **Nodes**.
2. Select **site > grid node > Events**.
3. View Last Event at the top of the table.

Event messages are also listed in `/var/local/log/bycast-err.log`.

4. Follow the guidance provided in the SMTT alarm contents to correct the issue.
5. Click **Reset event counts**.
6. Notify the tenant of the objects whose platform services messages have not been delivered.
7. Instruct the tenant to re-trigger the failed replication or notification by updating the object's metadata or tags.

The tenant can resubmit the existing values to avoid making unwanted changes.

### Platform services messages cannot be delivered

If the destination encounters an issue that prevents it from accepting platform services messages, the client



operation on the bucket succeeds, but the platform services message is not delivered. For example, this error might happen if credentials are updated on the destination such that StorageGRID can no longer authenticate to the destination service.

If platform services messages cannot be delivered because of an unrecoverable error, the Total Events (SMTT) alarm is triggered in the Grid Manager.

#### **Slower performance for platform service requests**

StorageGRID software might throttle incoming S3 requests for a bucket if the rate at which the requests are being sent exceeds the rate at which the destination endpoint can receive the requests. Throttling only occurs when there is a backlog of requests waiting to be sent to the destination endpoint.

The only visible effect is that the incoming S3 requests will take longer to execute. If you start to detect significantly slower performance, you should reduce the ingest rate or use an endpoint with higher capacity. If the backlog of requests continues to grow, client S3 operations (such as PUT requests) will eventually fail.

CloudMirror requests are more likely to be affected by the performance of the destination endpoint because these requests typically involve more data transfer than search integration or event notification requests.

#### **Platform service requests fail**

To view the request failure rate for platform services:

1. Select **Nodes**.
2. Select **site > Platform Services**.
3. View the Request Failure Rate chart.



## Data Center 1



### Platform services unavailable alert

The **Platform services unavailable** alert indicates that no platform service operations can be performed at a site because too few Storage Nodes with the RSM service are running or available.

The RSM service ensures platform service requests are sent to their respective endpoints.

To resolve this alert, determine which Storage Nodes at the site include the RSM service. (The RSM service is present on Storage Nodes that also include the ADC service.) Then, ensure that a simple majority of those Storage Nodes are running and available.



If more than one Storage Node that contains the RSM service fails at a site, you lose any pending platform service requests for that site.



## Additional troubleshooting guidance for platform services endpoints

For additional information about troubleshooting platform services endpoints, see the instructions for using tenant accounts.

[Use a tenant account](#)

### Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

[Configuring Storage proxy settings](#)

## Configuring S3 and Swift client connections

As a grid administrator, you manage the configuration options that control how S3 and Swift tenants can connect client applications to your StorageGRID system to store and retrieve data. There are a number of different options to meet different client and tenant requirements.

Client applications can store or retrieve objects by connecting to any of the following:

- The Load Balancer service on Admin Nodes or Gateway Nodes, or optionally, the virtual IP address of a high availability (HA) group of Admin Nodes or Gateway Nodes
- The CLB service on Gateway Nodes, or optionally, the virtual IP address of a high availability group of Gateway Nodes



The CLB service is deprecated. Clients configured before the StorageGRID 11.3 release can continue to use the CLB service on Gateway Nodes. All other client applications that depend on StorageGRID to provide load balancing should connect using the Load Balancer service.

- Storage Nodes, with or without an external load balancer

You can optionally configure the following features on your StorageGRID system:

- **Load Balancer service:** You enable clients to use the Load Balancer service by creating load balancer endpoints for client connections. When creating a load balancer endpoint, you specify a port number, whether the endpoint accepts HTTP or HTTPS connections, the type of client (S3 or Swift) that will use the endpoint, and the certificate to be used for HTTPS connections (if applicable).
- **Untrusted Client Network:** You can make the Client Network more secure by configuring it as untrusted. When the Client Network is untrusted, clients can only connect using load balancer endpoints.
- **High availability groups:** You can create an HA group of Gateway Nodes or Admin Nodes to create an active-backup configuration, or you can use round-robin DNS or a third-party load balancer and multiple HA groups to achieve an active-active configuration. Client connections are made using the virtual IP addresses of HA groups.

You can also enable the use of HTTP for clients that connect to StorageGRID either directly to Storage Nodes or using the CLB service (deprecated), and you can configure S3 API endpoint domain names for S3 clients.

### Summary: IP addresses and ports for client connections

Client applications can connect to StorageGRID using the IP address of a grid node and



the port number of a service on that node. If high availability (HA) groups are configured, client applications can connect using the virtual IP address of the HA group.

#### About this task

This table summarizes the different ways that clients can connect to StorageGRID and the IP addresses and ports that are used for each type of connection. The instructions describe how to find this information in the Grid Manager if load balancer endpoints and high availability (HA) groups are already configured.

Where connection is made	Service that client connects to	IP address	Port
HA group	Load Balancer	Virtual IP address of an HA group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Load balancer endpoint port</li> </ul>
HA group	CLB <b>Note:</b> The CLB service is deprecated.	Virtual IP address of an HA group	Default S3 ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HTTPS: 8082</li> <li>HTTP: 8084</li> </ul> Default Swift ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HTTPS:8083</li> <li>HTTP:8085</li> </ul>
Admin Node	Load Balancer	IP address of the Admin Node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Load balancer endpoint port</li> </ul>
Gateway Node	Load Balancer	IP address of the Gateway Node	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Load balancer endpoint port</li> </ul>
Gateway Node	CLB <b>Note:</b> The CLB service is deprecated.	IP address of the Gateway Node  <b>Note:</b> By default, HTTP ports for CLB and LDR are not enabled.	Default S3 ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HTTPS: 8082</li> <li>HTTP: 8084</li> </ul> Default Swift ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HTTPS:8083</li> <li>HTTP:8085</li> </ul>
Storage Node	LDR	IP address of Storage Node	Default S3 ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HTTPS: 18082</li> <li>HTTP: 18084</li> </ul> Default Swift ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HTTPS: 18083</li> <li>HTTP:18085</li> </ul>



## Examples

To connect an S3 client to the Load Balancer endpoint of an HA group of Gateway Nodes, use a URL structured as shown below:

- `https://VIP-of-HA-group:LB-endpoint-port`

For example, if the virtual IP address of the HA group is 192.0.2.5 and the port number of an S3 Load Balancer endpoint is 10443, then an S3 client could use the following URL to connect to StorageGRID:

- `https://192.0.2.5:10443`

To connect a Swift client to the Load Balancer endpoint of an HA group of Gateway Nodes, use a URL structured as shown below:

- `https://VIP-of-HA-group:LB-endpoint-port`

For example, if the virtual IP address of the HA group is 192.0.2.6 and the port number of a Swift Load Balancer endpoint is 10444, then a Swift client could use the following URL to connect to StorageGRID:

- `https://192.0.2.6:10444`

It is possible to configure a DNS name for the IP address that clients use to connect to StorageGRID. Contact your local network administrator.

## Steps

1. Sign in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
2. To find the IP address of a grid node:
  - a. Select **Nodes**.
  - b. Select the Admin Node, Gateway Node, or Storage Node to which you want to connect.
  - c. Select the **Overview** tab.
  - d. In the Node Information section, note the IP addresses for the node.
  - e. Click **Show more** to view IPv6 addresses and interface mappings.

You can establish connections from client applications to any of the IP addresses in the list:

- **eth0**: Grid Network
- **eth1**: Admin Network (optional)
- **eth2**: Client Network (optional)



If you are viewing an Admin Node or a Gateway Node and it is the active node in a high availability group, the virtual IP address of the HA group is shown on eth2.

3. To find the virtual IP address of a high availability group:
  - a. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > High Availability Groups**.
  - b. In the table, note the virtual IP address of the HA group.
4. To find the port number of a Load Balancer endpoint:
  - a. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Load Balancer Endpoints**.



The Load Balancer Endpoints page appears, showing the list of endpoints that have already been configured.

- b. Select an endpoint, and click **Edit endpoint**.

The Edit Endpoint window opens and displays additional details about the endpoint.

- c. Confirm that the endpoint you have selected is configured for use with the correct protocol (S3 or Swift), then click **Cancel**.
- d. Note the port number for the endpoint that you want to use for a client connection.



If the port number is 80 or 443, the endpoint is configured only on Gateway Nodes, since those ports are reserved on Admin Nodes. All other ports are configured on both Gateway Nodes and Admin Nodes.

## Managing load balancing

You can use the StorageGRID load balancing functions to handle ingest and retrieval workloads from S3 and Swift clients. Load balancing maximizes speed and connection capacity by distributing the workloads and connections across multiple Storage Nodes.

You can achieve load balancing in your StorageGRID system in the following ways:

- Use the Load Balancer service, which is installed on Admin Nodes and Gateway Nodes. The Load Balancer service provides Layer 7 load balancing and performs TLS termination of client requests, inspects the requests, and establishes new secure connections to the Storage Nodes. This is the recommended load balancing mechanism.
- Use the Connection Load Balancer (CLB) service, which is installed on Gateway Nodes only. The CLB service provides Layer 4 load balancing and supports link costs.



The CLB service is deprecated.

- Integrate a third-party load balancer. Contact your NetApp account representative for details.

### How load balancing works - Load Balancer service

The Load Balancer service distributes incoming network connections from client applications to Storage Nodes. To enable load balancing, you must configure load balancer endpoints using the Grid Manager.

You can configure load balancer endpoints only for Admin Nodes or Gateway Nodes, since these node types contain the Load Balancer service. You cannot configure endpoints for Storage Nodes or Archive Nodes.

Each load balancer endpoint specifies a port, a protocol (HTTP or HTTPS), a service type (S3 or Swift), and a binding mode. HTTPS endpoints require a server certificate. Binding modes allow you to restrict the accessibility of endpoint ports to:

- Specific high availability (HA) virtual IP addresses (VIPs)
- Specific network interfaces of specific nodes



## Port considerations

Clients can access any of the endpoints you configure on any node running the Load Balancer service, with two exceptions: ports 80 and 443 are reserved on Admin Nodes, so endpoints configured on these ports support load balancing operations only on Gateway Nodes.

If you have remapped any ports, you cannot use the same ports to configure load balancer endpoints. You can create endpoints using remapped ports, but those endpoints will be remapped to the original CLB ports and service, not the Load Balancer service. Follow the steps in the recovery and maintenance instructions for removing port remaps.



The CLB service is deprecated.

## CPU availability

The Load Balancer service on each Admin Node and Gateway Node operates independently when forwarding S3 or Swift traffic to the Storage Nodes. Through a weighting process, the Load Balancer service routes more requests to Storage Nodes with higher CPU availability. Node CPU load information is updated every few minutes, but weighting might be updated more frequently. All Storage Nodes are assigned a minimal base weight value, even if a node reports 100% utilization or fails to report its utilization.

In some cases, information about CPU availability is limited to the site where the Load Balancer service is located.

## Related information

[Maintain & recover](#)

## Configuring load balancer endpoints

You can create, edit, and remove load balancer endpoints.

### Creating load balancer endpoints

Each load balancer endpoint specifies a port, a network protocol (HTTP or HTTPS), and a service type (S3 or Swift). If you create an HTTPS endpoint, you must upload or generate a server certificate.

### What you'll need

- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- If you have previously remapped ports you intend to use for the Load Balancer service, you must have removed the remaps.



If you have remapped any ports, you cannot use the same ports to configure load balancer endpoints. You can create endpoints using remapped ports, but those endpoints will be remapped to the original CLB ports and service, not the Load Balancer service. Follow the steps in the recovery and maintenance instructions for removing port remaps.



The CLB service is deprecated.

## Steps


1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Load Balancer Endpoints**.



The Load Balancer Endpoints page appears.

## Load Balancer Endpoints

Load balancer endpoints define Gateway Node and Admin Node ports that accept and load balance S3 and Swift requests to Storage Nodes. HTTPS endpoint certificates are configured per endpoint.

 Changes to endpoints can take up to 15 minutes to be applied to all nodes.

 Add endpoint port  Edit endpoint  Remove endpoint port

Display name	Port	Using HTTPS
--------------	------	-------------

*No endpoints configured.*

### 2. Select **Add endpoint**.

The Create Endpoint dialog box appears.

#### Create Endpoint

Display Name

Port

Protocol

☐ HTTP

☐ HTTPS

Endpoint Binding Mode

☒ Global

☐ HA Group VIPs

☐ Node Interfaces

Cancel

Save

3. Enter a display name for the endpoint, which will appear in the list on the Load Balancer Endpoints page.

4. Enter a port number, or leave the pre-filled port number as is.

If you enter port number 80 or 443, the endpoint is configured only on Gateway Nodes, since these ports are reserved on Admin Nodes.



Ports used by other grid services are not permitted. See the networking guidelines for a list of ports used for internal and external communications.

5. Select **HTTP** or **HTTPS** to specify the network protocol for this endpoint.

6. Select an endpoint binding mode.

- **Global** (default): The endpoint is accessible on all Gateway Nodes and Admin Nodes on the specified port number.




## Create Endpoint

Display Name

Port

Protocol ☐ HTTP ☐ HTTPS

Endpoint Binding Mode ☒ Global ☐ HA Group VIPs ☐ Node Interfaces

 This endpoint is currently bound globally. All nodes will use this endpoint unless an endpoint with an overriding binding mode exists for a specific port.

Cancel Save

- **HA Group VIPs:** The endpoint is accessible only through the virtual IP addresses defined for the selected HA groups. Endpoints defined in this mode can reuse the same port number, as long as the HA groups defined by those endpoints do not overlap with each other.

Select the HA groups with the virtual IP addresses where you want the endpoint to appear.

## Create Endpoint

Display Name


Port

Protocol ☐ HTTP ☐ HTTPS

Endpoint Binding Mode ☐ Global ☒ HA Group VIPs ☐ Node Interfaces

	Name	Description	Virtual IP Addresses	Interfaces
<input type="checkbox"/>	Group1		192.168.5.163	CO-REF-DC1-ADM1:eth0 (preferred Master)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Group2		47.47.5.162	CO-REF-DC1-ADM1:eth2 (preferred Master)

Displaying 2 HA groups.

 No HA groups selected. You must select one or more HA Groups; otherwise, this endpoint will act as a globally bound endpoint.

Cancel Save

- **Node Interfaces:** The endpoint is accessible only on the designated nodes and network interfaces. Endpoints defined in this mode can reuse the same port number as long as those interfaces do not overlap with each other.

Select the node interfaces where you want the endpoint to appear.



Create Endpoint

Display Name

Port

10443

Protocol

☐ HTTP
☐ HTTPS

Endpoint Binding Mode

☐ Global
☐ HA Group VIPs
☒ Node Interfaces

	Node	Interface
<input type="checkbox"/>	CO-REF-DC1-ADM1	eth0
<input type="checkbox"/>	CO-REF-DC1-ADM1	eth1
<input type="checkbox"/>	CO-REF-DC1-ADM1	eth2
<input type="checkbox"/>	CO-REF-DC1-GW1	eth0
<input type="checkbox"/>	CO-REF-DC2-ADM1	eth0
<input type="checkbox"/>	CO-REF-DC2-GW1	eth0

⚠

No node interfaces selected. You must select one or more node interfaces; otherwise, this endpoint will act as a globally bound endpoint.

Cancel

Save

7. Select **Save**.

The Edit Endpoint dialog box appears.

8. Select **S3** or **Swift** to specify the type of traffic this endpoint will serve.

Edit Endpoint Unsecured Port A (port 10449)

Endpoint Service Configuration

Endpoint service type

☒ S3
☐ Swift

9. If you selected **HTTP**, select **Save**.

The unsecured endpoint is created. The table on the Load Balancer Endpoints page lists the endpoint's display name, port number, protocol, and endpoint ID.

10. If you selected **HTTPS** and you want to upload a certificate, select **Upload Certificate**.



## Load Certificate

Upload the PEM-encoded custom certificate, private key, and CA bundle files.

Server Certificate

Certificate Private Key

CA Bundle

Cancel

Save

- a. Browse for the server certificate and the certificate private key.

To enable S3 clients to connect using an S3 API endpoint domain name, use a multi-domain or wildcard certificate that matches all domain names that the client might use to connect to the grid. For example, the server certificate might use the domain name `*.example.com`.

[Configuring S3 API endpoint domain names](#)

- b. Optionally browse for a CA bundle.
- c. Select **Save**.

The PEM-encoded certificate data for the endpoint appears.

11. If you selected **HTTPS** and you want to generate a certificate, select **Generate Certificate**.

## Generate Certificate

Domain 1  

IP 1  

Subject

Days valid

Cancel


Generate

- a. Enter a domain name or an IP address.

You can use wildcards to represent the fully qualified domain names of all Admin Nodes and Gateway Nodes running the Load Balancer service. For example, `*.sgws.foo.com` uses the `*` wildcard to represent `gn1.sgws.foo.com` and `gn2.sgws.foo.com`.



## Configuring S3 API endpoint domain names

- b. Select  to add any other domain names or IP addresses.

If you are using high availability (HA) groups, add the domain names and IP addresses of the HA virtual IPs.

- c. Optionally, enter an X.509 subject, also referred to as the Distinguished Name (DN), to identify who owns the certificate.
- d. Optionally, select the number of days the certificate is valid. The default is 730 days.
- e. Select **Generate**.

The certificate metadata and the PEM-encoded certificate data for the endpoint appear.

12. Click **Save**.

The endpoint is created. The table on the Load Balancer Endpoints page lists the endpoint's display name, port number, protocol, and endpoint ID.

### Related information

[Maintain & recover](#)

[Network guidelines](#)

[Managing high availability groups](#)

[Managing untrusted Client Networks](#)

### Editing load balancer endpoints

For an unsecured (HTTP) endpoint, you can change the endpoint service type between S3 and Swift. For a secured (HTTPS) endpoint, you can edit the endpoint service type and view or change the security certificate.

### What you'll need

- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Load Balancer Endpoints**.

The Load Balancer Endpoints page appears. The existing endpoints are listed in the table.

Endpoints with certificates that will expire soon are identified in the table.



Load balancer endpoints define Gateway Node and Admin Node ports that accept and load balance S3 and Swift requests to Storage Nodes. HTTPS endpoint certificates are configured per endpoint.

2. Select the endpoint you want to edit.
3. Click **Edit endpoint**.

For an unsecured (HTTP) endpoint, only the Endpoint Service Configuration section of the dialog box appears. For a secured (HTTPS) endpoint, the Endpoint Service Configuration and the Certificates sections of the dialog box appear, as shown in the following example.

4. Make the desired changes to the endpoint.

- Change the endpoint service type between S3 and Swift.



- Change the endpoint binding mode. For a secured (HTTPS) endpoint, you can:
- Change the endpoint service type between S3 and Swift.
- Change the endpoint binding mode.
- View the security certificate.
- Upload or generate a new security certificate when the current certificate is expired or about to expire.

Select a tab to display detailed information about the default StorageGRID server certificate or a CA signed certificate that was uploaded.



To change the protocol for an existing endpoint, for example from HTTP to HTTPS, you must create a new endpoint. Follow the instructions for creating load balancer endpoints, and select the desired protocol.

5. Click **Save**.

## Related information

[Creating load balancer endpoints](#)

## Removing load balancer endpoints

If you no longer need a load balancer endpoint, you can remove it.

## What you'll need

- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Load Balancer Endpoints**.

The Load Balancer Endpoints page appears. The existing endpoints are listed in the table.

### Load Balancer Endpoints

Load balancer endpoints define Gateway Node and Admin Node ports that accept and load balance S3 and Swift requests to Storage Nodes. HTTPS endpoint certificates are configured per endpoint.

<div> <span>+ Add endpoint</span> <span>✎ Edit endpoint</span> <span>✕ Remove endpoint</span> </div>			
	Display name	Port	Using HTTPS
<input type="radio"/>	Unsecured Endpoint 5	10444	No
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Secured Endpoint 1	10443	Yes
Displaying 2 endpoints.			

2. Select the radio button to the left of the endpoint you want to remove.
3. Click **Remove endpoint**.

A confirmation dialog box appears.



## Warning

Remove Endpoint

Are you sure you want to remove endpoint 'Secured Endpoint 1'?

Cancel

OK

4. Click **OK**.

The endpoint is removed.

### How load balancing works - CLB service

The Connection Load Balancer (CLB) service on Gateway Nodes is deprecated. The Load Balancer service is now the recommended load balancing mechanism.

The CLB service uses Layer 4 load balancing to distribute incoming TCP network connections from client applications to the optimal Storage Node based on availability, system load, and the administrator-configured link cost. When the optimal Storage Node is chosen, the CLB service establishes a two-way network connection and forwards the traffic to and from the chosen node. The CLB does not consider the Grid Network configuration when directing incoming network connections.

To view information about the CLB service, select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**, and then expand a Gateway Node until you can select **CLB** and the options below it.

The screenshot shows the 'Grid Topology' view on the left, where a tree structure of nodes is displayed. A blue box highlights the 'DC1-G1-98-161' node, which contains sub-nodes for 'SSM', 'CLB', 'HTTP', 'Events', and 'Resources'. On the right, the 'Overview' tab is selected, showing a summary for 'DC1-G1-98-161' updated on 2015-10-27. Below this is a 'Storage Capacity' table.

Storage Capacity	
Storage Nodes Installed:	N/A
Storage Nodes Readable:	N/A
Storage Nodes Writable:	N/A
Installed Storage Capacity:	N/A
Used Storage Capacity:	N/A
Used Storage Capacity for Data:	N/A
Used Storage Capacity for Metadata:	N/A
Usable Storage Capacity:	N/A

If you choose to use the CLB service, you should consider configuring link costs for your StorageGRID system.

### Related information

[What link costs are](#)

[Updating link costs](#)



## Managing untrusted Client Networks

If you are using a Client Network, you can help secure StorageGRID from hostile attacks by accepting inbound client traffic only on explicitly configured endpoints.

By default, the Client Network on each grid node is *trusted*. That is, by default, StorageGRID trusts inbound connections to each grid node on all available external ports (see the information about external communications in the network guidelines).

You can reduce the threat of hostile attacks on your StorageGRID system by specifying that the Client Network on each node be *untrusted*. If a node's Client Network is untrusted, the node only accepts inbound connections on ports explicitly configured as load balancer endpoints.

### Example 1: Gateway Node only accepts HTTPS S3 requests

Suppose you want a Gateway Node to refuse all inbound traffic on the Client Network except for HTTPS S3 requests. You would perform these general steps:

1. From the Load Balancer Endpoints page, configure a load balancer endpoint for S3 over HTTPS on port 443.
2. From the Untrusted Client Networks page, specify that the Client Network on the Gateway Node is untrusted.

After you save your configuration, all inbound traffic on the Gateway Node's Client Network is dropped except for HTTPS S3 requests on port 443 and ICMP echo (ping) requests.

### Example 2: Storage Node sends S3 platform services requests

Suppose you want to enable outbound S3 platform service traffic from a Storage Node, but you want to prevent any inbound connections to that Storage Node on the Client Network. You would perform this general step:

- From the Untrusted Client Networks page, indicate that the Client Network on the Storage Node is untrusted.

After you save your configuration, the Storage Node no longer accepts any incoming traffic on the Client Network, but it continues to allow outbound requests to Amazon Web Services.

### Related information

[Network guidelines](#)

[Configuring load balancer endpoints](#)

### Specifying a node's Client Network is untrusted

If you are using a Client Network, you can specify whether each node's Client Network is trusted or untrusted. You can also specify the default setting for new nodes added in an expansion.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.
- If you want an Admin Node or Gateway Node to accept inbound traffic only on explicitly configured



endpoints, you have defined the load balancer endpoints.



Existing client connections might fail if load balancer endpoints have not been configured.

## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Untrusted Client Network**.

The Untrusted Client Networks page appears.

This page lists all nodes in your StorageGRID system. The Unavailable Reason column includes an entry if the Client Network on the node must be trusted.

### Untrusted Client Networks

If you are using a Client Network, you can specify whether a node trusts inbound traffic from the Client Network. If the Client Network is untrusted, the node only accepts inbound traffic on ports configured as [load balancer endpoints](#).

#### Set New Node Default

This setting applies to new nodes expanded into the grid.

New Node Client Network  
Default ☒ Trusted  
☐ Untrusted

#### Select Untrusted Client Network Nodes

Select nodes that should have untrusted Client Network enforcement.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Node Name	Unavailable Reason
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC1-ADM1	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC1-G1	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC1-S1	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC1-S2	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC1-S3	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC1-S4	
Client Network untrusted on 0 nodes.		

Save

2. In the **Set New Node Default** section, specify what the default setting should be when new nodes are added to the grid in an expansion procedure.
  - **Trusted**: When a node is added in an expansion, its Client Network is trusted.
  - **Untrusted**: When a node is added in an expansion, its Client Network is untrusted. As required, you can return to this page to change the setting for a specific new node.



This setting does not affect the existing nodes in your StorageGRID system.

3. In the **Select Untrusted Client Network Nodes** section, select the nodes that should allow client connections only on explicitly configured load balancer endpoints.



You can select or unselect the check box in the title to select or unselect all nodes.

4. Click **Save**.

The new firewall rules are immediately added and enforced. Existing client connections might fail if load balancer endpoints have not been configured.

#### Related information

[Configuring load balancer endpoints](#)

## Managing high availability groups

High availability (HA) groups can be used to provide highly available data connections for S3 and Swift clients. HA groups can also be used to provide highly available connections to the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager.

- [What an HA group is](#)
- [How HA groups are used](#)
- [Configuration options for HA groups](#)
- [Creating a high availability group](#)
- [Editing a high availability group](#)
- [Removing a high availability group](#)

### What an HA group is

High availability groups use virtual IP addresses (VIPs) to provide active-backup access to Gateway Node or Admin Node services.

An HA group consists of one or more network interfaces on Admin Nodes and Gateway Nodes. When creating an HA group, you select network interfaces belonging to the Grid Network (eth0) or the Client Network (eth2). All interfaces in an HA group must be within the same network subnet.

An HA group maintains one or more virtual IP addresses that are added to the active interface in the group. If the active interface becomes unavailable, the virtual IP addresses are moved to another interface. This failover process generally takes only a few seconds and is fast enough that client applications should experience little impact and can rely on normal retry behaviors to continue operation.

The active interface in an HA group is designated as the Master. All other interfaces are designated as Backup. To view these designations, select **Nodes > *node* > Overview**.



Overview

Hardware

Network

Storage

Load Balancer

Events

Tasks

## Node Information ?

Name	DC1-ADM1
Type	Admin Node
ID	711b7b9b-8d24-4d9f-877a-be3fa3ac27e8
Connection State	✓ Connected
Software Version	11.4.0 (build 20200515.2346.8edcbbf)
HA Groups	Fabric Pools, Master
IP Addresses	192.168.2.208, 10.224.2.208, 47.47.2.208, 47.47.4.219 <a href="#">Show more</a> ▼

When creating an HA group, you specify one interface to be the preferred Master. The preferred Master is the active interface unless a failure occurs that causes the VIP addresses to be reassigned to a Backup interface. When the failure is resolved, the VIP addresses are automatically moved back to the preferred Master.

Failover can be triggered for any of these reasons:

- The node on which the interface is configured goes down.
- The node on which the interface is configured loses connectivity to all other nodes for at least 2 minutes
- The active interface goes down.
- The Load Balancer service stops.
- The High Availability service stops.



Failover might not be triggered by network failures external to the node that hosts the active interface. Similarly, failover is not triggered by the failure of the CLB service (deprecated) or services for the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager.

If the HA group includes interfaces from more than two nodes, the active interface might move to any other node's interface during failover.

## How HA groups are used

You might want to use high availability (HA) groups for several reasons.

- An HA group can provide highly available administrative connections to the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager.
- An HA group can provide highly available data connections for S3 and Swift clients.
- An HA group that contains only one interface allows you to provide many VIP addresses and to explicitly set IPv6 addresses.

An HA group can provide high availability only if all nodes included in the group provide the same services. When you create an HA group, add interfaces from the types of nodes that provide the services you require.



- **Admin Nodes:** Include the Load Balancer service and enable access to the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager.
- **Gateway Nodes:** Include the Load Balancer service and the CLB service (deprecated).

Purpose of HA group	Add nodes of this type to the HA group
Access to Grid Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary Admin Node (<b>preferred Master</b>)</li> <li>• Non-primary Admin Nodes</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The primary Admin Node must be the preferred Master. Some maintenance procedures can only be performed from the primary Admin Node.</p>
Access to Tenant Manager only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary or non-primary Admin Nodes</li> </ul>
S3 or Swift client access — Load Balancer service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Admin Nodes</li> <li>• Gateway Nodes</li> </ul>
S3 or Swift client access — CLB service  <b>Note:</b> The CLB service is deprecated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gateway Nodes</li> </ul>

#### Limitations of using HA groups with Grid Manager or Tenant Manager

The failure of services for the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager does not trigger failover within the HA group.

If you are signed in to the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager when failover occurs, you are signed out and must sign in again to resume your task.

Some maintenance procedures cannot be performed when the primary Admin Node is unavailable. During failover, you can use the Grid Manager to monitor your StorageGRID system.

#### Limitations of using HA groups with the CLB service

The failure of the CLB service does not trigger failover within the HA group.

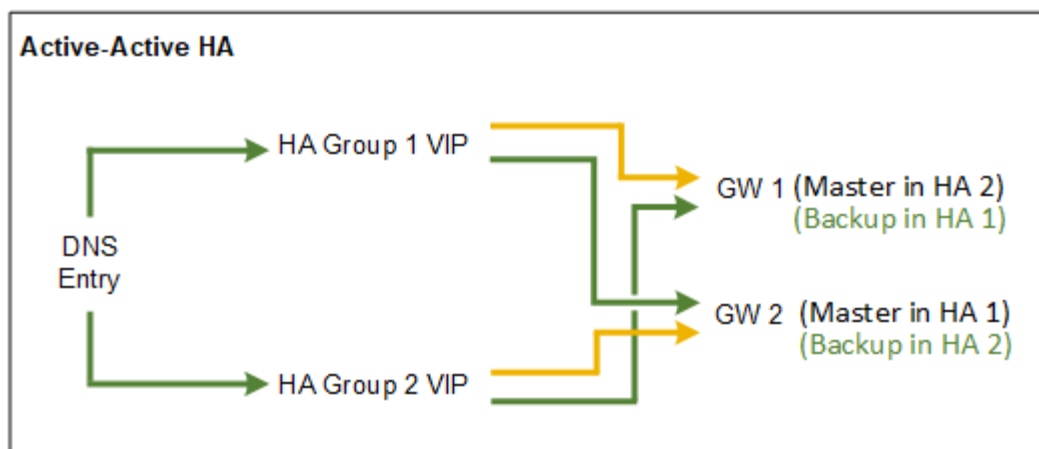
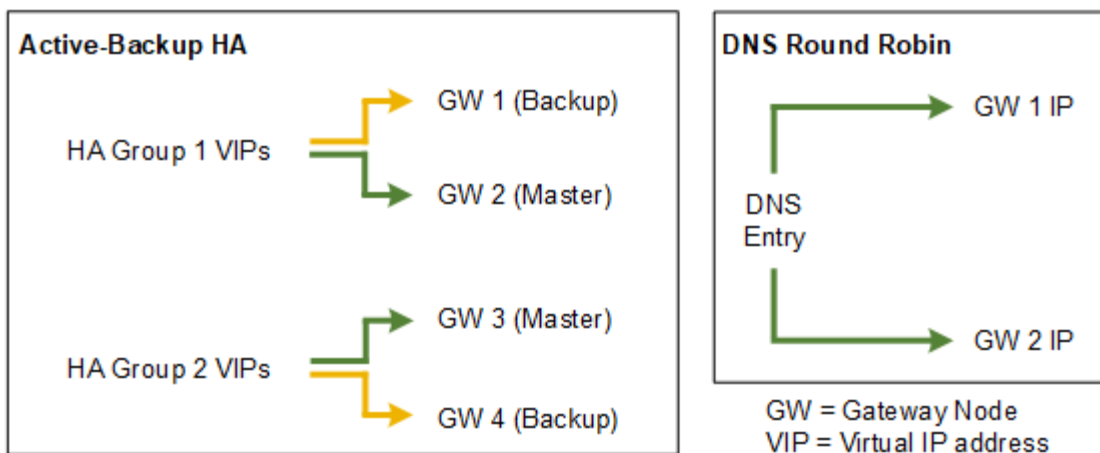


The CLB service is deprecated.

#### Configuration options for HA groups

The following diagrams provide examples of different ways you can configure HA groups. Each option has advantages and disadvantages.





When creating multiple overlapping HA groups as shown in the Active-Active HA example, the total throughput scales with the number of nodes and HA groups. With three or more nodes and three or more HA groups, you also gain the ability to continue operations using any of the VIPs even during maintenance procedures that require you to take a node offline.

The table summarizes the benefits of each HA configuration shown in the diagram.

Configuration	Advantages	Disadvantages
Active-Backup HA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Managed by StorageGRID with no external dependencies.</li> <li>Fast failover.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only one node in an HA group is active. At least one node per HA group will be idle.</li> </ul>
DNS Round Robin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increased aggregate throughput.</li> <li>No idle hosts.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Slow failover, which could depend on client behavior.</li> <li>Requires configuration of hardware outside of StorageGRID.</li> <li>Needs a customer-implemented health check.</li> </ul>



Configuration	Advantages	Disadvantages
Active-Active	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Traffic is distributed across multiple HA groups.</li> <li>• High aggregate throughput that scales with the number of HA groups.</li> <li>• Fast failover.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More complex to configure.</li> <li>• Requires configuration of hardware outside of StorageGRID.</li> <li>• Needs a customer-implemented health check.</li> </ul>

## Creating a high availability group

You can create one or more high availability (HA) groups to provide highly available access to the services on Admin Nodes or Gateway Nodes.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.

### About this task

An interface must meet the following conditions to be included in an HA group:

- The interface must be for a Gateway Node or an Admin Node.
- The interface must belong to the Grid Network (eth0) or the Client Network (eth2).
- The interface must be configured with fixed or static IP addressing, not with DHCP.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > High Availability Groups**.

The High Availability Groups page appears.

#### High Availability Groups

High availability (HA) groups allow multiple nodes to participate in an active-backup group. HA groups maintain virtual IP addresses on the active node and switch to a backup node automatically if a node fails.



2. Click **Create**.

The Create High Availability Group dialog box appears.

3. Type a name and, if desired, a description for the HA group.
4. Click **Select Interfaces**.

The Add Interfaces to High Availability Group dialog box appears. The table lists eligible nodes, interfaces, and IPv4 subnets.



## Add Interfaces to High Availability Group

Select interfaces to include in the HA group. All interfaces must be in the same network subnet.

Add to HA group	Node Name	Interface	IPv4 Subnet	Unavailable Reason
	g140-g1	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g1	eth2	47.47.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g2	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g2	eth2	47.47.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g3	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	g140-g3	eth2	192.168.0.0/21	
	g140-g4	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	g140-g4	eth2	192.168.0.0/21	
There are 2 interfaces selected.				

Cancel

Apply

An interface does not appear in the list if its IP address is assigned by DHCP.

5. In the **Add to HA group** column, select the check box for the interface you want to add to the HA group.

Note the following guidelines for selecting interfaces:

- You must select at least one interface.
- If you select more than one interface, all of the interfaces must be on either the Grid Network (eth0) or on the Client Network (eth2).
- All interfaces must be in the same subnet or in subnets with a common prefix.

IP addresses will be restricted to the smallest subnet (the one with the largest prefix).

- If you select interfaces on different types of nodes, and a failover occurs, only the services common to the selected nodes will be available on the virtual IPs.
  - Select two or more Admin Nodes for HA protection of the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager.
  - Select two or more Admin Nodes, Gateway Nodes, or both for HA protection of the Load Balancer service.
  - Select two or more Gateway Nodes for HA protection of the CLB service.



The CLB service is deprecated.



## Add Interfaces to High Availability Group

Select interfaces to include in the HA group. All interfaces must be in the same network subnet.

Add to HA group	Node Name	Interface	IPv4 Subnet	Unavailable Reason
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DC1-ADM1	eth0	10.96.100.0/23	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DC1-G1	eth0	10.96.100.0/23	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DC2-ADM1	eth0	10.96.100.0/23	

There are 3 interfaces selected.

**Attention:** You have selected nodes of different types that run different services. If a failover occurs, only the services common to all node types will be available on the virtual IPs.

Cancel

Apply

6. Click **Apply**.

The interfaces you selected are listed in the Interfaces section of the Create High Availability Group page. By default, the first interface in the list is selected as the Preferred Master.



## Create High Availability Group

### High Availability Group

Name

Description

### Interfaces

Select interfaces to include in the HA group. All interfaces must be in the same network subnet.

Select Interfaces

Node Name	Interface	IPv4 Subnet	Preferred Master
g140-g1	eth2	47.47.0.0/21	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
g140-g2	eth2	47.47.0.0/21	<input type="radio"/>

Displaying 2 interfaces.

### Virtual IP Addresses

Virtual IP Subnet: 47.47.0.0/21. All virtual IP addresses must be within this subnet. There must be at least 1 and no more than 10 virtual IP addresses.

Virtual IP Address 1



Cancel

Save

- If you want a different interface to be the preferred Master, select that interface in the **Preferred Master** column.

The preferred Master is the active interface unless a failure occurs that causes the VIP addresses to be reassigned to a Backup interface.



If the HA group provides access to the Grid Manager, you must select an interface on the primary Admin Node to be the preferred Master. Some maintenance procedures can only be performed from the primary Admin Node.

- In the Virtual IP Addresses section of the page, enter one to 10 virtual IP addresses for the HA group. Click the plus sign (+) to add multiple IP addresses.

You must provide at least one IPv4 address. Optionally, you can specify additional IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

IPv4 addresses must be within the IPv4 subnet shared by all of the member interfaces.



9. Click **Save**.

The HA Group is created, and you can now use the configured virtual IP addresses.

### Related information

[Install Red Hat Enterprise Linux or CentOS](#)

[Install VMware](#)

[Install Ubuntu or Debian](#)

[Managing load balancing](#)

### Editing a high availability group

You can edit a high availability (HA) group to change its name and description, add or remove interfaces, or add or update a virtual IP address.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.

#### About this task

Some of the reasons for editing an HA group include the following:

- Adding an interface to an existing group. The interface IP address must be within the same subnet as other interfaces already assigned to the group.
- Removing an interface from an HA group. For example, you cannot start a site or node decommission procedure if a node's interface for the Grid Network or the Client Network is used in an HA group.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > High Availability Groups**.

The High Availability Groups page appears.

#### High Availability Groups

High availability (HA) groups allow multiple nodes to participate in an active-backup group. HA groups maintain virtual IP addresses on the active node and switch to a backup node automatically if a node fails.

<div><div><div><div></div><div>Create</div></div><div><div></div><div>Edit</div></div><div><div></div><div>Remove</div></div></div></div>				
	Name	Description	Virtual IP Addresses	Interfaces
<input type="radio"/>	HA Group 1		47.47.4.219	g140-adm1:eth2 (preferred Master) g140-g1:eth2
<input type="radio"/>	HA Group 2		47.47.4.218 47.47.4.217	g140-g1:eth2 (preferred Master) g140-g2:eth2
Displaying 2 HA groups.				

2. Select the HA group you want to edit, and click **Edit**.



The Edit High Availability Group dialog box appears.

3. Optionally, update the group's name or description.
4. Optionally, click **Select Interfaces** to change the interfaces for the HA Group.

The Add Interfaces to High Availability Group dialog box appears.

Add Interfaces to High Availability Group

Select interfaces to include in the HA group. All interfaces must be in the same network subnet.

Add to HA group	Node Name	Interface	IPv4 Subnet	Unavailable Reason
	g140-g1	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g1	eth2	47.47.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g2	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g2	eth2	47.47.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
	g140-g3	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	g140-g3	eth2	192.168.0.0/21	
	g140-g4	eth0	172.16.0.0/21	This IP address is not in the same subnet as the selected interfaces
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	g140-g4	eth2	192.168.0.0/21	

There are 2 interfaces selected.

Cancel

Apply

An interface does not appear in the list if its IP address is assigned by DHCP.

5. Select or unselect the check boxes to add or remove interfaces.

Note the following guidelines for selecting interfaces:

- You must select at least one interface.
- If you select more than one interface, all of the interfaces must be on either the Grid Network (eth0) or on the Client Network (eth2).
- All interfaces must be in the same subnet or in subnets with a common prefix.

IP addresses will be restricted to the smallest subnet (the one with the largest prefix).

- If you select interfaces on different types of nodes, and a failover occurs, only the services common to the selected nodes will be available on the virtual IPs.
  - Select two or more Admin Nodes for HA protection of the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager.
  - Select two or more Admin Nodes, Gateway Nodes, or both for HA protection of the Load Balancer service.
  - Select two or more Gateway Nodes for HA protection of the CLB service.



The CLB service is deprecated.

6. Click **Apply**.



The interfaces you selected are listed in the Interfaces section of the page. By default, the first interface in the list is selected as the Preferred Master.

## Edit High Availability Group 'HA Group - Admin Nodes'

### High Availability Group

Name HA Group - Admin Nodes

Description

### Interfaces

Select interfaces to include in the HA group. All interfaces must be in the same network subnet.

Select Interfaces

Node Name	Interface	IPv4 Subnet	Preferred Master
DC1-ADM1	eth0	10.96.100.0/23	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
DC2-ADM1	eth0	10.96.100.0/23	<input type="radio"/>

Displaying 2 interfaces.

### Virtual IP Addresses

Virtual IP Subnet: 10.96.100.0/23. All virtual IP addresses must be within this subnet. There must be at least 1 and no more than 10 virtual IP addresses.

Virtual IP Address 1

10.96.100.1



Cancel

Save

- If you want a different interface to be the preferred Master, select that interface in the **Preferred Master** column.

The preferred Master is the active interface unless a failure occurs that causes the VIP addresses to be reassigned to a Backup interface.



If the HA group provides access to the Grid Manager, you must select an interface on the primary Admin Node to be the preferred Master. Some maintenance procedures can only be performed from the primary Admin Node.

- Optionally, update the virtual IP addresses for the HA group.

You must provide at least one IPv4 address. Optionally, you can specify additional IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.



IPv4 addresses must be within the IPv4 subnet shared by all of the member interfaces.

- Click **Save**.

The HA Group is updated.

## Removing a high availability group

You can remove a high availability (HA) group that you are no longer using.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.

### About this task

If you remove an HA group, any S3 or Swift clients that are configured to use one of the group's virtual IP addresses will no longer be able to connect to StorageGRID. To prevent client disruptions, you should update all affected S3 or Swift client applications before you remove an HA group. Update each client to connect using another IP address, for example, the virtual IP address of a different HA group or the IP address that was configured for an interface during installation or using DHCP.

### Steps

- Select **Configuration > Network Settings > High Availability Groups**.

The High Availability Groups page appears.

#### High Availability Groups

High availability (HA) groups allow multiple nodes to participate in an active-backup group. HA groups maintain virtual IP addresses on the active node and switch to a backup node automatically if a node fails.

<div><div><div><div></div><div>Create</div></div><div><div></div><div>Edit</div></div><div><div></div><div>Remove</div></div></div></div>				
	Name	Description	Virtual IP Addresses	Interfaces
<input type="radio"/>	HA Group 1		47.47.4.219	g140-adm1:eth2 (preferred Master) g140-g1:eth2
<input type="radio"/>	HA Group 2		47.47.4.218 47.47.4.217	g140-g1:eth2 (preferred Master) g140-g2:eth2
Displaying 2 HA groups.				

- Select the HA group you want to remove, and click **Remove**.

The Delete High Availability Group warning appears.



## Warning

### Delete High Availability Group

Are you sure you want to delete High Availability Group 'HA group 1'?

Cancel

OK

3. Click **OK**.

The HA group is removed.

## Configuring S3 API endpoint domain names

To support S3 virtual hosted-style requests, you must use the Grid Manager to configure the list of endpoint domain names that S3 clients connect to.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must have confirmed that a grid upgrade is not in progress.



Do not make any changes to the domain name configuration when a grid upgrade is in progress.

### About this task

To enable clients to use S3 endpoint domain names, you must do all of the following tasks:

- Use the Grid Manager to add the S3 endpoint domain names to the StorageGRID system.
- Ensure that the certificate the client uses for HTTPS connections to StorageGRID is signed for all domain names that the client requires.

For example, if the endpoint is `s3.company.com`, you must ensure that the certificate used for HTTPS connections includes the `s3.company.com` endpoint and the endpoint's wildcard Subject Alternative Name (SAN): `*.s3.company.com`.

- Configure the DNS server used by the client. Include DNS records for the IP addresses that clients use to make connections, and ensure that the records reference all required endpoint domain names, including any wildcard names.



Clients can connect to StorageGRID using the IP address of a Gateway Node, an Admin Node, or a Storage Node, or by connecting to the virtual IP address of a high availability group. You should understand how client applications connect to the grid so you include the correct IP addresses in the DNS records.

The certificate a client uses for HTTPS connections depends on how the client connects to the grid:



- If a client connects using the Load Balancer service, it uses the certificate for a specific load balancer endpoint.



Each load balancer endpoint has its own certificate, and each endpoint can be configured to recognize different endpoint domain names.

- If the client connects to a Storage Node or to the CLB service on a Gateway Node, the client uses a grid custom server certificate that has been updated to include all required endpoint domain names.



The CLB service is deprecated.

## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Domain Names**.

The Endpoint Domain Names page appears.

Endpoint Domain Names

### Virtual Hosted-Style Requests

Enable support of S3 virtual hosted-style requests by specifying API endpoint domain names. Support is disabled if this list is empty. Examples: s3.example.com, s3.example.co.uk, s3-east.example.com

Endpoint 1	<input type="text" value="s3.example.com"/>	✕
Endpoint 2	<input type="text"/>	+ ✕
<div>Save</div>		

2. Using the (+) icon to add additional fields, enter the list of S3 API endpoint domain names in the **Endpoint** fields.

If this list is empty, support for S3 virtual hosted-style requests is disabled.

3. Click **Save**.
4. Ensure that the server certificates that clients use match the required endpoint domain names.
  - For clients that use the Load Balancer service, update the certificate associated with the load balancer endpoint that the client connects to.
  - For clients that connect directly to Storage Nodes or that use the CLB service on Gateway Nodes, update the custom server certificate for the grid.
5. Add the DNS records required to ensure that endpoint domain name requests can be resolved.

## Result

Now, when clients use the endpoint `bucket.s3.company.com`, the DNS server resolves to the correct endpoint and the certificate authenticates the endpoint as expected.

## Related information

[Use S3](#)

[Viewing IP addresses](#)



[Creating a high availability group](#)

[Configuring a custom server certificate for connections to the Storage Node or the CLB service](#)

[Configuring load balancer endpoints](#)

## Enabling HTTP for client communications

By default, client applications use the HTTPS network protocol for all connections to Storage Nodes or to the deprecated CLB service on Gateway Nodes. You can optionally enable HTTP for these connections, for example, when testing a non-production grid.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

Complete this task only if S3 and Swift clients need to make HTTP connections directly to Storage Nodes or to the deprecated CLB service on Gateway Nodes.

You do not need to complete this task for clients that only use HTTPS connections or for clients that connect to the Load Balancer service (because you can configure each Load Balancer endpoint to use either HTTP or HTTPS). See the information on configuring load balancer endpoints for more information.

See [Summary: IP addresses and ports for client connections](#) to learn which ports S3 and Swift clients use when connecting to Storage Nodes or to the deprecated CLB service using HTTP or HTTPS



Be careful when enabling HTTP for a production grid because requests will be sent unencrypted.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Grid Options**.
2. In the Network Options section, select the **Enable HTTP Connection** check box.

#### Network Options

A screenshot of the 'Network Options' configuration section. It features three settings: 'Prevent Client Modification' with a help icon and a disabled checkbox; 'Enable HTTP Connection' with a help icon and a checked checkbox, which is highlighted by a yellow rounded rectangle; and 'Network Transfer Encryption' with a help icon, two radio buttons, and two labels: 'AES128-SHA' (which is selected) and 'AES256-SHA'.

3. Click **Save**.

### Related information

[Configuring load balancer endpoints](#)

[Use S3](#)



## Controlling which client operations are permitted

You can select the Prevent Client Modification grid option to deny specific HTTP client operations.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

Prevent Client Modification is a system wide setting. When the Prevent Client Modification option is selected, the following requests are denied:

#### • S3 REST API

- Delete Bucket requests
- Any requests to modify an existing object's data, user-defined metadata, or S3 object tagging



This setting does not apply to buckets with versioning enabled. Versioning already prevents modifications to object data, user-defined metadata, and object tagging.

#### • Swift REST API

- Delete Container requests
- Requests to modify any existing object. For example, the following operations are denied: Put Overwrite, Delete, Metadata Update, and so on.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Grid Options**.
2. In the Network Options section, select the **Prevent Client Modification** check box.

#### Network Options



Prevent Client Modification ☒

Enable HTTP Connection ☐

Network Transfer Encryption ☐ AES128-SHA ☒ AES256-SHA

3. Click **Save**.



# Managing StorageGRID networks and connections

You can use the Grid Manager to configure and manage StorageGRID networks and connections.

See [Configuring S3 and Swift client connections](#) to learn how to connect S3 or Swift clients.

- [Guidelines for StorageGRID networks](#)
- [Viewing IP addresses](#)
- [Supported ciphers for outgoing TLS connections](#)
- [Changing network transfer encryption](#)
- [Configuring server certificates](#)
- [Configuring Storage proxy settings](#)
- [Configuring Admin proxy settings](#)
- [Managing traffic classification policies](#)
- [What link costs are](#)

## Guidelines for StorageGRID networks

StorageGRID supports up to three network interfaces per grid node, allowing you to configure the networking for each individual grid node to match your security and access requirements.



To modify or add a network for a grid node, see the recovery and maintenance instructions. For more information about network topology, see the networking instructions.

### Grid Network

Required. The Grid Network is used for all internal StorageGRID traffic. It provides connectivity between all nodes in the grid, across all sites and subnets.

### Admin Network

Optional. The Admin Network is typically used for system administration and maintenance. It can also be used for client protocol access. The Admin Network is typically a private network and does not need to be routable between sites.

### Client Network

Optional. The Client Network is an open network typically used to provide access to S3 and Swift client applications, so the Grid Network can be isolated and secured. The Client Network can communicate with any subnet reachable through the local gateway.

### Guidelines

- Each StorageGRID grid node requires a dedicated network interface, IP address, subnet mask, and gateway for each network it is assigned to.
- A grid node cannot have more than one interface on a network.



- A single gateway, per network, per grid node is supported, and it must be on the same subnet as the node. You can implement more complex routing in the gateway, if required.
- On each node, each network maps to a specific network interface.

Network	Interface name
Grid	eth0
Admin (optional)	eth1
Client (optional)	eth2

- If the node is connected to a StorageGRID appliance, specific ports are used for each network. For details, see the installation instructions for your appliance.
- The default route is generated automatically, per node. If eth2 is enabled, then 0.0.0.0/0 uses the Client Network on eth2. If eth2 is not enabled, then 0.0.0.0/0 uses the Grid Network on eth0.
- The Client Network does not become operational until the grid node has joined the grid
- The Admin Network can be configured during grid node deployment to allow access to the installation user interface before the grid is fully installed.

#### Related information

[Maintain & recover](#)

[Network guidelines](#)

## Viewing IP addresses

You can view the IP address for each grid node in your StorageGRID system. You can then use this IP address to log into the grid node at the command line and perform various maintenance procedures.

#### What you'll need

You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

#### About this task

For information on changing IP addresses, see the recovery and maintenance instructions.

#### Steps

1. Select **Nodes** > *grid node* > **Overview**.
2. Click **Show more** to the right of the IP Addresses title.

The IP addresses for that grid node are listed in a table.



Node Information ⓘ	
Name	SGA-lab11
Type	Storage Node
ID	0b583829-6659-4c6e-b2d0-31461d22ba67
Connection State	✔ Connected
Software Version	11.4.0 (build 20200527.0043.61839a2)
IP Addresses	192.168.4.138, 10.224.4.138, 169.254.0.1 <a href="#">Show less</a> ▲
Interface	IP Address
eth0	192.168.4.138
eth0	fd20:331:331:0:2a0:98ff:fea1:831d
eth0	fe80::2a0:98ff:fea1:831d
eth1	10.224.4.138
eth1	fd20:327:327:0:280:e5ff:fe43:a99c
eth1	fd20:8b1e:b255:8154:280:e5ff:fe43:a99c
eth1	fe80::280:e5ff:fe43:a99c
hic2	192.168.4.138
hic4	192.168.4.138
mtc1	10.224.4.138
mtc2	169.254.0.1

## Related information

[Maintain & recover](#)

## Supported ciphers for outgoing TLS connections

The StorageGRID system supports a limited set of cipher suites for Transport Layer Security (TLS) connections to the external systems used for identity federation and Cloud Storage Pools.

### Supported versions of TLS

StorageGRID supports TLS 1.2 and TLS 1.3 for connections to external systems used for identity federation and Cloud Storage Pools.

The TLS ciphers that are supported for use with external systems have been selected to ensure compatibility with a range of external systems. The list is larger than the list of ciphers that are supported for use with S3 or Swift client applications.



TLS configuration options such as protocol versions, ciphers, key exchange algorithms, and MAC algorithms are not configurable in StorageGRID. Contact your NetApp account representative if you have specific requests about these settings.

### Supported TLS 1.2 cipher suites

The following TLS 1.2 cipher suites are supported:

- TLS\_ECDHE\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_GCM\_SHA256



- TLS\_ECDHE\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_GCM\_SHA256
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384
- TLS\_ECDHE\_RSA\_WITH\_CHACHA20\_POLY1305
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_CHACHA20\_POLY1305
- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_GCM\_SHA256
- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384

### Supported TLS 1.3 cipher suites

The following TLS 1.3 cipher suites are supported:

- TLS\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384
- TLS\_CHACHA20\_POLY1305\_SHA256
- TLS\_AES\_128\_GCM\_SHA256

## Changing network transfer encryption

The StorageGRID system uses Transport Layer Security (TLS) to protect internal control traffic between grid nodes. The Network Transfer Encryption option sets the algorithm used by TLS to encrypt control traffic between grid nodes. This setting does not affect data encryption.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

By default, network transfer encryption uses the AES256-SHA algorithm. Control traffic can also be encrypted using the AES128-SHA algorithm.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Grid Options**.
2. In the Network Options section, change Network Transfer Encryption to **AES128-SHA** or **AES256-SHA** (default).

#### Network Options



3. Click **Save**.



## Configuring server certificates

You can customize the server certificates used by the StorageGRID system.

The StorageGRID system uses security certificates for multiple distinct purposes:

- **Management Interface Server Certificates:** Used to secure access to the Grid Manager, the Tenant Manager, the Grid Management API, and the Tenant Management API.
- **Storage API Server Certificates:** Used to secure access to the Storage Nodes and Gateway Nodes, which API client applications use to upload and download object data.

You can use the default certificates created during installation, or you can replace either, or both, of these default types of certificates with your own custom certificates.

### Supported types of custom server certificate

The StorageGRID system supports custom server certificates encrypted with RSA or ECDSA (Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm).

For more information on how StorageGRID secures client connections for the REST API, see the S3 or Swift implementation guides.

### Certificates for load balancer endpoints

StorageGRID manages the certificates used for load balancer endpoints separately. To configure load balancer certificates, see the instructions for configuring load balancer endpoints.

#### Related information

[Use S3](#)

[Use Swift](#)

[Configuring load balancer endpoints](#)

### Configuring a custom server certificate for the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager

You can replace the default StorageGRID server certificate with a single custom server certificate that allows users to access the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager without encountering security warnings.

#### About this task

By default, every Admin Node is issued a certificate signed by the grid CA. These CA signed certificates can be replaced by a single common custom server certificate and corresponding private key.

Because a single custom server certificate is used for all Admin Nodes, you must specify the certificate as a wildcard or multi-domain certificate if clients need to verify the hostname when connecting to the Grid Manager and Tenant Manager. Define the custom certificate such that it matches all Admin Nodes in the grid.

You need to complete configuration on the server, and depending on the root Certificate Authority (CA) you are using, users might also need to install the root CA certificate in the web browser they will use to access the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager.





To ensure that operations are not disrupted by a failed server certificate, the **Expiration of server certificate for Management Interface** alert and the legacy Management Interface Certificate Expiry (MCEP) alarm are both triggered when this server certificate is about to expire. As required, you can view the number of days until the current service certificate expires by selecting **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**. Then, select **primary Admin Node > CMN > Resources**.



If you are accessing the Grid Manager or Tenant Manager using a domain name instead of an IP address, the browser shows a certificate error without an option to bypass if either of the following occurs:

- Your custom management interface server certificate expires.
- You revert from a custom management interface server certificate to the default server certificate.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Server Certificates**.
2. In the Management Interface Server Certificate section, click **Install Custom Certificate**.
3. Upload the required server certificate files:
  - **Server Certificate**: The custom server certificate file (.crt).
  - **Server Certificate Private Key**: The custom server certificate private key file (.key).



EC private keys must be 224 bits or larger. RSA private keys must be 2048 bits or larger.

- **CA Bundle**: A single file containing the certificates from each intermediate issuing Certificate Authority (CA). The file should contain each of the PEM-encoded CA certificate files, concatenated in certificate chain order.
4. Click **Save**.

The custom server certificates are used for all subsequent new client connections.

Select a tab to display detailed information about the default StorageGRID server certificate or a CA signed certificate that was uploaded.



After uploading a new certificate, allow up to one day for any related certificate expiration alerts (or legacy alarms) to clear.

5. Refresh the page to ensure the web browser is updated.

### Restoring the default server certificates for the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager

You can revert to using the default server certificates for the Grid Manager and the Tenant Manager.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Server Certificates**.
2. In the Manage Interface Server Certificate section, click **Use Default Certificates**.



3. Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box.

When you restore the default server certificates, the custom server certificate files you configured are deleted and cannot be recovered from the system. The default server certificates are used for all subsequent new client connections.

4. Refresh the page to ensure the web browser is updated.

### Configuring a custom server certificate for connections to the Storage Node or the CLB service

You can replace the server certificate that is used for S3 or Swift client connections to the Storage Node or to the CLB service (deprecated) on Gateway Node. The replacement custom server certificate is specific to your organization.

#### About this task

By default, every Storage Node is issued a X.509 server certificate signed by the grid CA. These CA signed certificates can be replaced by a single common custom server certificate and corresponding private key.

A single custom server certificate is used for all Storage Nodes, so you must specify the certificate as a wildcard or multi-domain certificate if clients need to verify the hostname when connecting to the storage endpoint. Define the custom certificate such that it matches all Storage Nodes in the grid.

After completing configuration on the server, users might also need to install the root CA certificate in the S3 or Swift API client they will use to access the system, depending on the root Certificate Authority (CA) you are using.



To ensure that operations are not disrupted by a failed server certificate, the **Expiration of server certificate for Storage API Endpoints** alert and the legacy Storage API Service Endpoints Certificate Expiry (SCEP) alarm are both triggered when the root server certificate is about to expire. As required, you can view the number of days until the current service certificate expires by selecting **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**. Then, select **primary Admin Node > CMN > Resources**.

The custom certificates are only used if clients connect to StorageGRID using the deprecated CLB service on Gateway Nodes, or if they connect directly to Storage Nodes. S3 or Swift clients that connect to StorageGRID using the Load Balancer service on Admin Nodes or Gateway Nodes use the certificate configured for the load balancer endpoint.



The **Expiration of load balancer endpoint certificate** alert is triggered for load balancer endpoints that will expire soon.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Server Certificates**.
2. In the Object Storage API Service Endpoints Server Certificate section, click **Install Custom Certificate**.
3. Upload the required server certificate files:
  - **Server Certificate**: The custom server certificate file (.crt).
  - **Server Certificate Private Key**: The custom server certificate private key file (.key).



EC private keys must be 224 bits or larger. RSA private keys must be 2048 bits or larger.



- **CA Bundle:** A single file containing the certificates from each intermediate issuing Certificate Authority (CA). The file should contain each of the PEM-encoded CA certificate files, concatenated in certificate chain order.

4. Click **Save**.

The custom server certificate is used for all subsequent new API client connections.

Select a tab to display detailed information about the default StorageGRID server certificate or a CA signed certificate that was uploaded.



After uploading a new certificate, allow up to one day for any related certificate expiration alerts (or legacy alarms) to clear.

5. Refresh the page to ensure the web browser is updated.

### Related information

[Use S3](#)

[Use Swift](#)

[Configuring S3 API endpoint domain names](#)

### Restoring the default server certificates for the S3 and Swift REST API endpoints

You can revert to using the default server certificates for the S3 and Swift REST API endpoints.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Server Certificates**.
2. In the Object Storage API Service Endpoints Server Certificate section, click **Use Default Certificates**.
3. Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box.

When you restore the default server certificates for the object storage API endpoints, the custom server certificate files you configured are deleted and cannot be recovered from the system. The default server certificates are used for all subsequent new API client connections.

4. Refresh the page to ensure the web browser is updated.

### Copying the StorageGRID system's CA certificate

StorageGRID uses an internal Certificate Authority (CA) to secure internal traffic. This certificate does not change if you upload your own certificates.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

#### About this task

If a custom server certificate has been configured, client applications should verify the server using the custom server certificate. They should not copy the CA certificate from the StorageGRID system.



## Steps

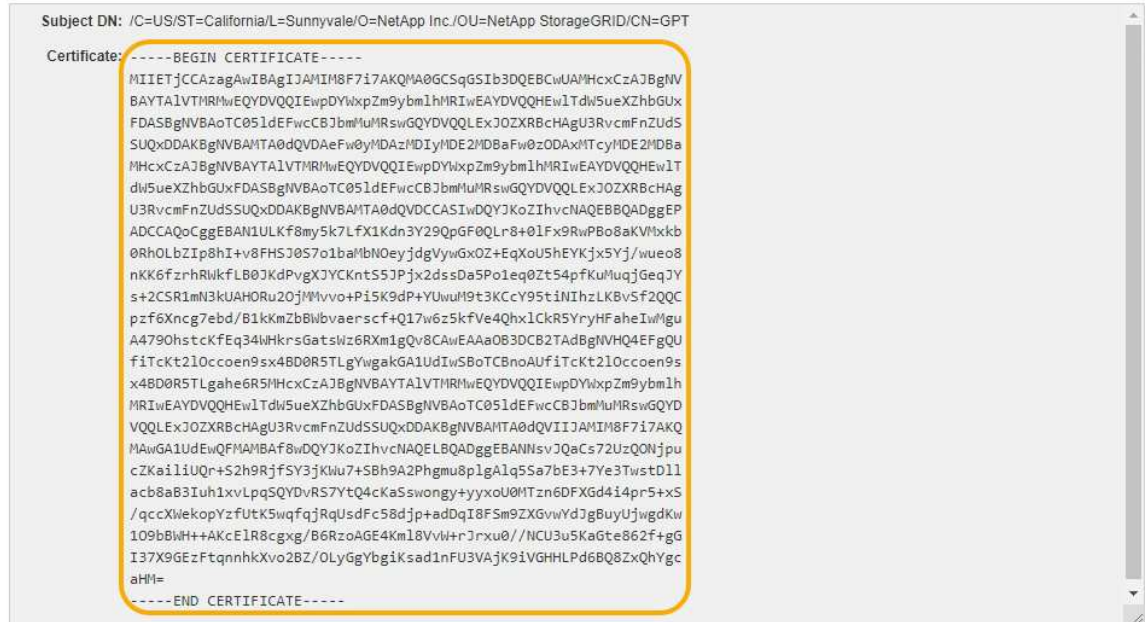
1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Server Certificates**.
2. In the **Internal CA Certificate** section, select all of the certificate text.

You must include -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- and -----END CERTIFICATE----- in your selection.

### Internal CA Certificate

StorageGRID uses an Internal Certificate Authority (CA) to secure internal traffic. This certificate does not change if you upload your own certificates.

To export the internal CA certificate, copy all of the certificate text (starting with -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- and ending with -----END CERTIFICATE-----), and save it as a .pem file.



3. Right-click the selected text, and select **Copy**.
4. Paste the copied certificate into a text editor.
5. Save the file with the extension .pem.

For example: storagegrid\_certificate.pem

## Configuring StorageGRID certificates for FabricPool

For S3 clients that perform strict hostname validation and do not support disabling strict hostname validation, such as ONTAP clients using FabricPool, you can generate or upload a server certificate when you configure the load balancer endpoint.

### What you'll need

- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

### About this task

When you create a load balancer endpoint, you can generate a self-signed server certificate or upload a certificate that is signed by a known Certificate Authority (CA). In production environments, you should use a certificate that is signed by a known CA. Certificates signed by a CA can be rotated non-disruptively. They are also more secure because they provide better protection against man-in-the-middle attacks.



The following steps provide general guidelines for S3 clients that use FabricPool. For more detailed information and procedures, see the instructions for configuring StorageGRID for FabricPool.



The separate Connection Load Balancer (CLB) service on Gateway Nodes is deprecated and no longer recommended for use with FabricPool.

### Steps

1. Optionally, configure a high availability (HA) group for FabricPool to use.
2. Create an S3 load balancer endpoint for FabricPool to use.

When you create an HTTPS load balancer endpoint, you are prompted to upload your server certificate, certificate private key, and CA bundle.

3. Attach StorageGRID as a cloud tier in ONTAP.

Specify the load balancer endpoint port and the fully qualified domain name used in the CA certificate you uploaded. Then, provide the CA certificate.



If an intermediate CA issued the StorageGRID certificate, you must provide the intermediate CA certificate. If the StorageGRID certificate was issued directly by the Root CA, you must provide the Root CA certificate.

### Related information

[Configure StorageGRID for FabricPool](#)

### Generating a self-signed server certificate for the management interface

You can use a script to generate a self-signed server certificate for management API clients that require strict hostname validation.

#### What you'll need

- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file.

#### About this task

In production environments, you should use a certificate that is signed by a known Certificate Authority (CA). Certificates signed by a CA can be rotated non-disruptively. They are also more secure because they provide better protection against man-in-the-middle attacks.

### Steps

1. Obtain the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of each Admin Node.
2. Log in to the primary Admin Node:
  - a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
  - b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.



When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from \$ to #.

### 3. Configure StorageGRID with a new self-signed certificate.

```
$ sudo make-certificate --domains wildcard-admin-node-fqdn --type management
```

- For `--domains`, use wildcards to represent the fully qualified domain names of all Admin Nodes. For example, `*.ui.storagegrid.example.com` uses the `*` wildcard to represent `admin1.ui.storagegrid.example.com` and `admin2.ui.storagegrid.example.com`.
- Set `--type` to `management` to configure the certificate used by Grid Manager and Tenant Manager.
- By default, generated certificates are valid for one year (365 days) and must be recreated before they expire. You can use the `--days` argument to override the default validity period.



A certificate's validity period begins when `make-certificate` is run. You must ensure the management API client is synchronized to the same time source as StorageGRID; otherwise, the client might reject the certificate.

```
$ sudo make-certificate --domains *.ui.storagegrid.example.com --type management --days 365
```

The resulting output contains the public certificate needed by your management API client.

### 4. Select and copy the certificate.

Include the BEGIN and the END tags in your selection.

### 5. Log out of the command shell. \$ exit

### 6. Confirm the certificate was configured:

- a. Access the Grid Manager.
- b. Select **Configuration > Server Certificates > Management Interface Server Certificate**.

### 7. Configure your management API client to use the public certificate you copied. Include the BEGIN and END tags.

## Configuring Storage proxy settings

If you are using platform services or Cloud Storage Pools, you can configure a non-transparent proxy between Storage Nodes and the external S3 endpoints. For example, you might need a non-transparent proxy to allow platform services messages to be sent to external endpoints, such as an endpoint on the internet.

### What you'll need

- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

### About this task

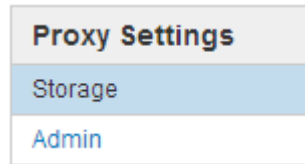
You can configure the settings for a single Storage proxy.



## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Proxy Settings**.

The Storage Proxy Settings page appears. By default, **Storage** is selected in the sidebar menu.



2. Select the **Enable Storage Proxy** check box.

The fields for configuring a Storage proxy appear.

### Storage Proxy Settings

If you are using platform services or Cloud Storage Pools, you can configure a non-transparent proxy server between Storage Nodes and the external S3 endpoints.

Enable Storage Proxy ☒

Protocol ☐ HTTP ☐ SOCKS5

Hostname

Port (optional)

3. Select the protocol for the non-transparent Storage proxy.
4. Enter the hostname or IP address of the proxy server.
5. Optionally, enter the port used to connect to the proxy server.

You can leave this field blank if you use the default port for the protocol: 80 for HTTP or 1080 for SOCKS5.

6. Click **Save**.

After the Storage proxy is saved, new endpoints for platform services or Cloud Storage Pools can be configured and tested.



Proxy changes can take up to 10 minutes to take effect.

7. Check the settings of your proxy server to ensure that platform service-related messages from StorageGRID will not be blocked.

## After you finish

If you need to disable a Storage proxy, deselect the **Enable Storage Proxy** check box, and click **Save**.

## Related information

[Networking and ports for platform services](#)

[Manage objects with ILM](#)



## Configuring Admin proxy settings

If you send AutoSupport messages using HTTP or HTTPS, you can configure a non-transparent proxy server between Admin Nodes and technical support (AutoSupport).

### What you'll need

- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.

### About this task

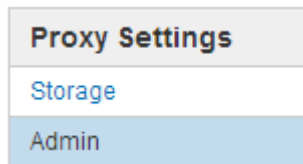
You can configure the settings for a single Admin proxy.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Proxy Settings**.

The Admin Proxy Settings page appears. By default, **Storage** is selected in the sidebar menu.

2. From the sidebar menu, select **Admin**.



3. Select the **Enable Admin Proxy** check box.

#### Admin Proxy Settings

If you send AutoSupport messages using HTTPS or HTTP, you can configure a non-transparent proxy server between Admin Nodes and technical support.

Enable Admin Proxy	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Hostname	<input type="text" value="myproxy.example.com"/>
Port	<input type="text" value="8080"/>
Username (optional)	<input type="text" value="root"/>
Password (optional)	<input type="password" value="••••••••"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

4. Enter the hostname or IP address of the proxy server.
5. Enter the port used to connect to the proxy server.
6. Optionally, enter the proxy username.

Leave this field blank if your proxy server does not require a username.

7. Optionally, enter the proxy password.



Leave this field blank if your proxy server does not require a password.

8. Click **Save**.

After the Admin proxy is saved, the proxy server between Admin Nodes and technical support is configured.



Proxy changes can take up to 10 minutes to take effect.

9. If you need to disable the proxy, deselect the **Enable Admin Proxy** check box, and click **Save**.

## Related information

[Specifying the protocol for AutoSupport messages](#)

## Managing traffic classification policies

To enhance your quality-of-service (QoS) offerings, you can create traffic classification policies to identify and monitor different types of network traffic. These policies can assist with traffic limiting and monitoring.

Traffic classification policies are applied to endpoints on the StorageGRID Load Balancer service for Gateway Nodes and Admin Nodes. To create traffic classification policies, you must have already created load balancer endpoints.

### Matching rules and optional limits

Each traffic classification policy contains one or more matching rules to identify the network traffic related to one or more of the following entities:

- Buckets
- Tenants
- Subnets (IPv4 subnets containing the client)
- Endpoints (load balancer endpoints)

StorageGRID monitors traffic that matches any rule within the policy according to the objectives of the rule. Any traffic that matches any rule for a policy is handled by that policy. Conversely, you can set rules to match all traffic except a specified entity.

Optionally, you can set limits for a policy based on the following parameters:

- Aggregate Bandwidth In
- Aggregate Bandwidth Out
- Concurrent Read Requests
- Concurrent Write Requests
- Per-Request Bandwidth In
- Per-Request Bandwidth Out
- Read Request Rate
- Write Requests Rate





You can create policies to limit aggregate bandwidth or to limit per-request bandwidth. However, StorageGRID cannot limit both types of bandwidth at the same time. Aggregate bandwidth limits might impose an additional minor performance impact on non-limited traffic.

## Traffic limiting

When you have created traffic classification policies, traffic is limited according to the type of rules and limits you set. For aggregate or per-request bandwidth limits, the requests stream in or out at the rate you set. StorageGRID can only enforce one speed, so the most specific policy match, by matcher type, is the one enforced. For all other limit types, client requests are delayed by 250 milliseconds and receive a 503 Slow Down response for requests that exceed any matching policy limit.

In the Grid Manager, you can view traffic charts and verify that the policies are enforcing the traffic limits you expect.

## Using traffic classification policies with SLAs

You can use traffic classification policies in conjunction with capacity limits and data protection to enforce service-level agreements (SLAs) that provide specifics for capacity, data protection, and performance.

Traffic classification limits are implemented per load balancer. If traffic is distributed simultaneously across multiple load balancers, the total maximum rates are a multiple of the rate limits you specify.

The following example shows three tiers of an SLA. You can create traffic classification policies to achieve the performance objectives of each SLA tier.

Service Level Tier	Capacity	Data Protection	Performance	Cost
Gold	1 PB storage allowed	3 copy ILM rule	25 K requests/sec  5 GB/sec (40 Gbps) bandwidth	\$\$\$ per month
Silver	250 TB storage allowed	2 copy ILM rule	10 K requests/sec  1.25 GB/sec (10 Gbps) bandwidth	\$\$ per month
Bronze	100 TB storage allowed	2 copy ILM rule	5 K requests/sec  1 GB/sec (8 Gbps) bandwidth	\$ per month

## Creating traffic classification policies

You create traffic classification policies if you want to monitor, and optionally limit, network traffic by bucket, tenant, IP subnet, or load balancer endpoint. Optionally, you can set limits for a policy based on bandwidth, the number of concurrent requests, or the request rate.

## What you'll need



- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.
- You must have created any load balancer endpoints you want to match.
- You must have created any tenants you want to match.

## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Traffic Classification**.

The Traffic Classification Policies page appears.

### Traffic Classification Policies

Traffic classification policies can be used to identify network traffic for metrics reporting and optional traffic limiting.

<div><div>+ Create</div><div>✎ Edit</div><div>✕ Remove</div><div>📊 Metrics</div></div>			
Name		Description	ID
No policies found.			

2. Click **Create**.

The Create Traffic Classification Policy dialog box appears.



## Create Traffic Classification Policy

### Policy

Name ⓘ

Description

### Matching Rules

Traffic that matches any rule is included in the policy.

+ Create

✎ Edit

✕ Remove

Type	Inverse Match	Match Value
------	---------------	-------------

*No matching rules found.*

### Limits (Optional)

+ Create

✎ Edit

✕ Remove

Type	Value	Units
------	-------	-------

*No limits found.*

Cancel

Save

3. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the policy.

Enter a descriptive name so you can recognize the policy.

4. Optionally, add a description for the policy in the **Description** field.

For example, describe what this traffic classification policy applies to and what it will limit.

5. Create one or more matching rules for the policy.

Matching rules control which entities will be affected by this traffic classification policy. For example, select Tenant if you want this policy to apply to the network traffic for a specific tenant. Or select Endpoint if you want this policy to apply to the network traffic on a specific load balancer endpoint.



- a. Click **Create** in the **Matching Rules** section.


The Create Matching Rule dialog box appears.






## Create Matching Rule

### Matching Rules

Type  -- Choose One -- 

Match Value  Choose type before providing match value

Inverse Match  ☐

b. From the **Type** drop-down, select the type of entity to be included in the matching rule.

c. In the **Match Value** field, enter a match value based on the type of entity you chose.

- **Bucket:** Enter a bucket name.
- **Bucket Regex:** Enter a regular expression that will be used to match a set of bucket names.

The regular expression is unanchored. Use the ^ anchor to match at the beginning of the bucket name, and use the \$ anchor to match at the end of the name.

- **CIDR:** Enter an IPv4 subnet, in CIDR notation, that matches the desired subnet.
  - **Endpoint:** Select an endpoint from the list of existing endpoints. These are the load balancer endpoints you defined on the Load Balancer Endpoints page.
  - **Tenant:** Select a tenant from the list of existing tenants. Tenant matching is based on the ownership of the bucket being accessed. Anonymous access to a bucket matches the tenant that owns the bucket.
- d. If you want to match all network traffic *except* traffic consistent with the Type and Match Value just defined, select the **Inverse** check box. Otherwise, leave the check box unselected.

For example, if you want this policy to apply to all but one of the load balancer endpoints, specify the load balancer endpoint to be excluded, and select **Inverse**.



For a policy containing multiple matchers where at least one is an inverse matcher, be careful not to create a policy that matches all requests.

e. Click **Apply**.

The rule is created and is listed in the Matching Rules table.



<div> <div>+ Create</div> <div>Edit</div> <div>✕ Remove</div> </div>		
Type	Inverse Match	Match Value
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Bucket Regex	✓	control-ld+
Displaying 1 matching rule.		


#### Limits (Optional)

<div> <div>+ Create</div> <div>Edit</div> <div>✕ Remove</div> </div>		
Type	Value	Units


No limits found.

Cancel Save

- f. Repeat these steps for each rule you want to create for the policy.

 Traffic that matches any rule is handled by the policy.

6. Optionally, create limits for the policy.



 Even if you do not create limits, StorageGRID collects metrics so that you can monitor network traffic that matches the policy.


- a. Click **Create** in the **Limits** section.

The Create Limit dialog box appears.

#### Create Limit

#### Limits (Optional)

Type  -- Choose One -- 

Aggregate rate limits in use. Per-request rate limits are not available. 

Value 

Cancel Apply

- b. From the **Type** drop-down, select the type of limit you want to apply to the policy.

In the following list, **In** refers to traffic from S3 or Swift clients to the StorageGRID load balancer, and **Out** refers to traffic from the load balancer to S3 or Swift clients.



- Aggregate Bandwidth In
- Aggregate Bandwidth Out
- Concurrent Read Requests
- Concurrent Write Requests
- Per-Request Bandwidth In
- Per-Request Bandwidth Out
- Read Request Rate
- Write Requests Rate



You can create policies to limit aggregate bandwidth or to limit per-request bandwidth. However, StorageGRID cannot limit both types of bandwidth at the same time. Aggregate bandwidth limits might impose an additional minor performance impact on non-limited traffic.

For bandwidth limits, StorageGRID applies the policy that best matches the type of limit set. For example, if you have a policy that limits traffic in only one direction, then traffic in the opposite direction will be unlimited, even if there is traffic that matches additional policies that have bandwidth limits. StorageGRID implements “best” matches for bandwidth limits in the following order:

- Exact IP address (/32 mask)
- Exact bucket name
- Bucket regex
- Tenant
- Endpoint
- Non-exact CIDR matches (not /32)
- Inverse matches

c. In the **Value** field, enter a numerical value for the type of limit you chose.

The expected units are shown when you select a limit.

d. Click **Apply**.

The limit is created and is listed in the Limits table.



+ Create
Edit
Remove

Type	Inverse Match	Match Value
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Bucket Regex	✓	control-ld+

Displaying 1 matching rule.

### Limits (Optional)

+ Create
Edit
Remove

Type	Value	Units
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Aggregate Bandwidth Out	10000000000	Bytes/Second

Displaying 1 limit.

Cancel
Save

- e. Repeat these steps for each limit you want to add to the policy.

For example, if you want to create a 40 Gbps bandwidth limit for an SLA tier, create an Aggregate Bandwidth In limit and an Aggregate Bandwidth Out limit and set each one to 40 Gbps.



To convert megabytes per second to gigabits per second, multiply by eight. For example, 125 MB/s is equivalent to 1,000 Mbps or 1 Gbps.

7. When you are finished creating rules and limits, click **Save**.

The policy is saved and is listed in the Traffic Classification Policies table.

### Traffic Classification Policies

Traffic classification policies can be used to identify network traffic for metrics reporting and optional traffic limiting.

+ Create Edit Remove Metrics		
Name	Description	ID
<input type="radio"/> ERP Traffic Control	Manage ERP traffic into the grid	cd9afbc7-b85e-4208-b6f8-7e8a79e2c574
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fabric Pools	Monitor Fabric Pools	223b0cbb-6968-4646-b32d-7665bdbc894b

Displaying 2 traffic classification policies.

S3 and Swift client traffic is now handled according to the traffic classification policies. You can view traffic charts and verify that the policies are enforcing the traffic limits you expect.

### Related information

[Managing load balancing](#)

[Viewing network traffic metrics](#)



Editing a traffic classification policy

You can edit a traffic classification policy to change its name or description, or to create, edit, or delete any rules or limits for the policy.

What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.

Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Traffic Classification**.

The Traffic Classification Policies page appears, and the existing policies are listed in the table.

Traffic Classification Policies

Traffic classification policies can be used to identify network traffic for metrics reporting and optional traffic limiting.

+ Create

✎ Edit

✕ Remove

📊 Metrics

	Name	Description	ID
<input type="radio"/>	ERP Traffic Control	Manage ERP traffic into the grid	cd9afbc7-b85e-4208-b6f8-7e8a79e2c574
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Fabric Pools	Monitor Fabric Pools	223b0cbb-6968-4646-b32d-7665bdc894b

Displaying 2 traffic classification policies.


2. Select the radio button to the left of the policy you want to edit.
3. Click **Edit**.

The Edit Traffic Classification Policy dialog box appears.



## Edit Traffic Classification Policy "Fabric Pools"

### Policy

Name 

Fabric Pools

Description (optional)

Monitor Fabric Pools

### Matching Rules

Traffic that matches any rule is included in the policy.

+ Create  Edit  Remove

	Type	Inverse Match	Match Value
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	CIDR		10.10.152.0/24

Displaying 1 matching rule.

### Limits (Optional)

+ Create  Edit  Remove

	Type	Value	Units
--	------	-------	-------

No limits found.

Cancel

Save

4. Create, edit, or remove matching rules and limits as needed.
  - a. To create a matching rule or limit, click **Create**, and follow the instructions for creating a rule or creating a limit.
  - b. To edit a matching rule or limit, select the radio button for the rule or limit, click **Edit** in the **Matching Rules** section or the **Limits** section, and follow the instructions for creating a rule or creating a limit.
  - c. To remove a matching rule or limit, select the radio button for the rule or limit, and click **Remove**. Then, click **OK** to confirm that you want to remove the rule or limit.
5. When you are finished creating or editing a rule or a limit, click **Apply**.
6. When you are finished editing the policy, click **Save**.

The changes you made to the policy are saved, and network traffic is now handled according to the traffic classification policies. You can view traffic charts and verify that the policies are enforcing the traffic limits you expect.

### Deleting a traffic classification policy

If you no longer need a traffic classification policy, you can delete it.



What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.

Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Traffic Classification**.

The Traffic Classification Policies page appears, and the existing policies are listed in the table.

Traffic Classification Policies

Traffic classification policies can be used to identify network traffic for metrics reporting and optional traffic limiting.

+ Create

Edit

Remove

Metrics

Name	Description	ID
<input type="radio"/> ERP Traffic Control	Manage ERP traffic into the grid	cd9afbc7-b85e-4208-b6f8-7e8a79e2c574
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fabric Pools	Monitor Fabric Pools	223b0cbb-6968-4646-b32d-7665bdc894b

Displaying 2 traffic classification policies.

2. Select the radio button to the left of the policy you want to delete.
3. Click **Remove**.

A Warning dialog box appears.

Warning

Delete Policy

Are you sure you want to delete the policy "Fabric Pools"?

Cancel

OK

4. Click **OK** to confirm that you want to delete the policy.

The policy is deleted.

Viewing network traffic metrics

You can monitor network traffic by viewing the graphs that are available from the Traffic Classification Policies page.

What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access permission.

About this task

For any existing traffic classification policy, you can view metrics for the Load Balancer service to determine if the policy is successfully limiting traffic across the network. The data in the graphs can help you determine if



you need adjust the policy.

Even if no limits are set for a traffic classification policy, metrics are collected and the graphs provide useful information for understanding traffic trends.

Steps

- 1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Traffic Classification**.

The Traffic Classification Policies page appears, and the existing policies are listed in the table.

Traffic Classification Policies

Traffic classification policies can be used to identify network traffic for metrics reporting and optional traffic limiting.

+ Create

Edit

Remove

Metrics

Name	Description	ID
<input type="radio"/> ERP Traffic Control	Manage ERP traffic into the grid	cd9afbc7-b85e-4208-b6f8-7e8a79e2c574
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fabric Pools	Monitor Fabric Pools	223b0cbb-6968-4646-b32d-7665bdc894b

Displaying 2 traffic classification policies.

- 2. Select the radio button to the left of the policy you want to view metrics for.
- 3. Click **Metrics**.

A new browser window opens, and the Traffic Classification Policy graphs appear. The graphs display metrics only for the traffic that matches the selected policy.

You can select other policies to view by using the **policy** pull-down.



The following graphs are included on the web page.

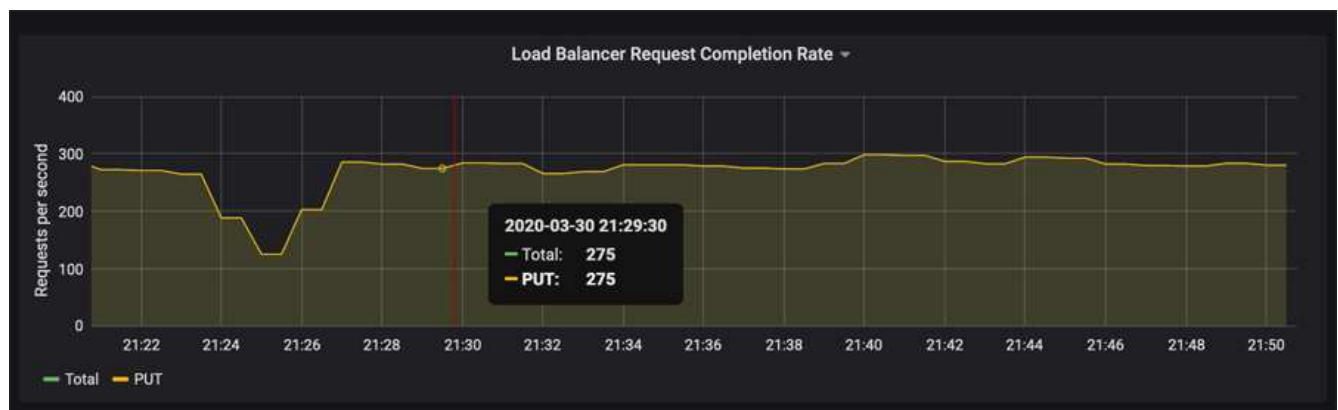
- **Load Balancer Request Traffic:** This graph provides a 3-minute moving average of the throughput of data transmitted between load balancer endpoints and the clients making the requests, in bits per



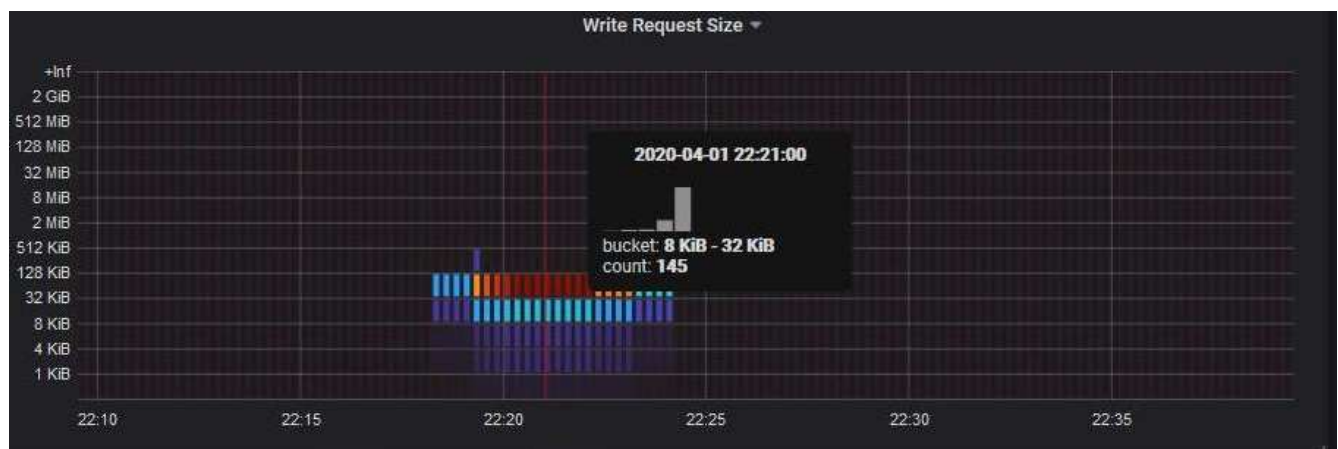
second.

- Load Balancer Request Completion Rate: This graph provides a 3-minute moving average of the number of completed requests per second, broken down by request type (GET, PUT, HEAD, and DELETE). This value is updated when the headers of a new request have been validated.
- Error Response Rate: This graph provides a 3-minute moving average of the number of error responses returned to clients per second, broken down by the error response code.
- Average Request Duration (Non-Error): This graph provides a 3-minute moving average of request durations, broken down by request type (GET, PUT, HEAD, and DELETE). Each request duration starts when a request header is parsed by the Load Balancer service and ends when the complete response body is returned to the client.
- Write Request Rate by Object Size: This heatmap provides a 3-minute moving average of the rate at which write requests are completed based on object size. In this context, write requests refer only to PUT requests.
- Read Request Rate by Object Size: This heatmap provides a 3-minute moving average of the rate at which read requests are completed based on object size. In this context, read requests refer only to GET requests. The colors in the heatmap indicate the relative frequency of an object size within an individual graph. The cooler colors (for example, purple and blue) indicate lower relative rates, and the warmer colors (for example, orange and red) indicate higher relative rates.

4. Hover the cursor over a line graph to see a pop-up of values on a specific part of the graph.



5. Hover the cursor over a heatmap to see a pop-up that shows the date and time of the sample, object sizes that are aggregated into the count, and the number of requests per second during that time period.



6. Use the **Policy** pull-down in the upper left to select a different policy.

The graphs for the selected policy appear.



7. Alternatively, access the graphs from the **Support** menu.
  - a. Select **Support > Tools > Metrics**.
  - b. In the **Grafana** section of the page, select **Traffic Classification Policy**.
  - c. Select the policy from the pull-down on the upper left of the page.

Traffic classification policies are identified by their ID. Policy IDs are listed on the Traffic Classification Policies page.

8. Analyze the graphs to determine how often the policy is limiting traffic and whether you need to adjust the policy.

#### Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

### What link costs are

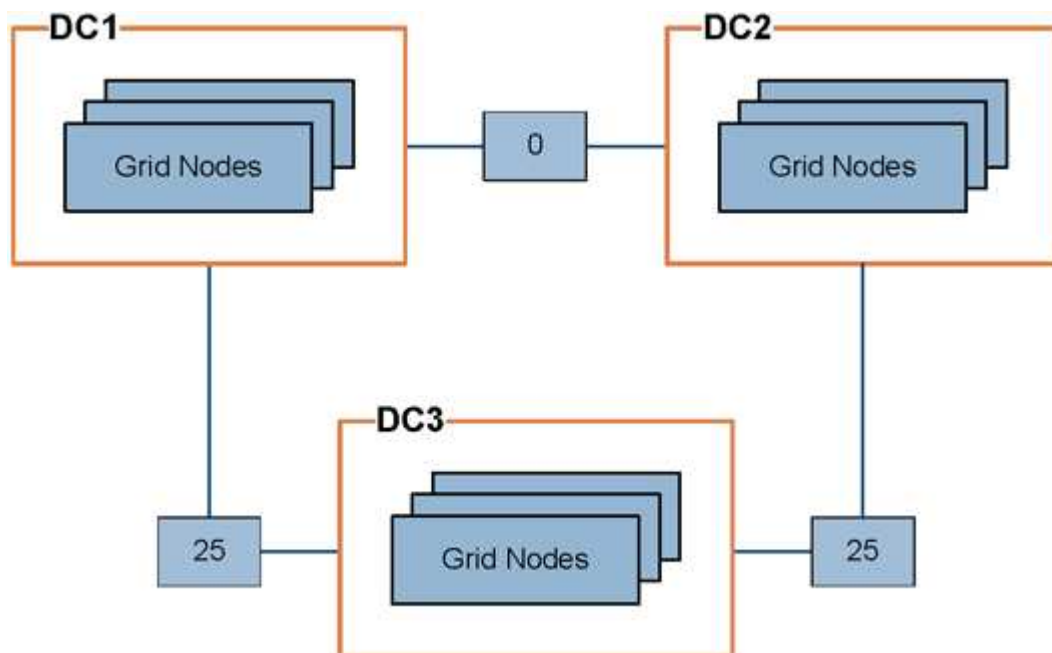
Link costs let you prioritize which data center site provides a requested service when two or more data center sites exist. You can adjust link costs to reflect latency between sites.

- Link costs are used to prioritize which object copy is used to fulfill object retrievals.
- Link costs are used by the Grid Management API and the Tenant Management API to determine which internal StorageGRID services to use.
- Link costs are used by the CLB service on Gateway Nodes to direct client connections.



The CLB service is deprecated.

The diagram shows a three site grid that has link costs configured between sites:



- The CLB service on Gateway Nodes equally distribute client connections to all Storage Nodes at the same data center site and to any data center sites with a link cost of 0.



In the example, a Gateway Node at data center site 1 (DC1) equally distributes client connections to Storage Nodes at DC1 and to Storage Nodes at DC2. A Gateway Node at DC3 sends client connections only to Storage Nodes at DC3.

- When retrieving an object that exists as multiple replicated copies, StorageGRID retrieves the copy at the data center that has the lowest link cost.

In the example, if a client application at DC2 retrieves an object that is stored both at DC1 and DC3, the object is retrieved from DC1, because the link cost from DC1 to D2 is 0, which is lower than the link cost from DC3 to DC2 (25).

Link costs are arbitrary relative numbers with no specific unit of measure. For example, a link cost of 50 is used less preferentially than a link cost of 25. The table shows commonly used link costs.

Link	Link cost	Notes
Between physical data center sites	25 (default)	Data centers connected by a WAN link.
Between logical data center sites at the same physical location	0	Logical data centers in the same physical building or campus connected by a LAN.

#### Related information

[How load balancing works - CLB service](#)

#### Updating link costs

You can update the link costs between data center sites to reflect latency between sites.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Grid Topology Page Configuration permission.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > Network Settings > Link Cost**.





## Link Cost

Updated: 2021-03-29 12:28:41 EDT

Site Names (1 - 2 of 2)

Site ID	Site Name	Actions
10	Data Center 1	
20	Data Center 2	

Show 50 Records Per Page  Previous « 1 » Next

### Link Costs

Link Source	Link Destination	Actions
<input type="text"/>		

Apply Changes

2. Select a site under **Link Source** and enter a cost value between 0 and 100 under **Link Destination**.

You cannot change the link cost if the source is the same as the destination.

To cancel changes, click **Revert**.

3. Click **Apply Changes**.

## Configuring AutoSupport

The AutoSupport feature enables your StorageGRID system to send health and status messages to technical support. Using AutoSupport can significantly speed problem determination and resolution. Technical support can also monitor the storage needs of your system and help you determine if you need to add new nodes or sites. Optionally, you can configure AutoSupport messages to be sent to one additional destination.

### Information included in AutoSupport messages

AutoSupport messages include information such as the following:

- StorageGRID software version
- Operating system version
- System-level and location-level attribute information
- Recent alerts and alarms (legacy system)
- Current status of all grid tasks, including historical data
- Events information as listed on the **Nodes > Grid Node > Events** page
- Admin Node database usage
- Number of lost or missing objects




- Grid configuration settings
- NMS entities
- Active ILM policy
- Provisioned grid specification file
- Diagnostic metrics

You can enable the AutoSupport feature and the individual AutoSupport options when you first install StorageGRID, or you can enable them later. If AutoSupport is not enabled, a message appears on the Grid Manager Dashboard. The message includes a link to the AutoSupport configuration page.

The AutoSupport feature is disabled. You should [enable AutoSupport](#) to allow StorageGRID to send health and status messages to technical support for proactive monitoring and troubleshooting.



You can select the “x” symbol  to close the message. The message will not appear again until your browser cache is cleared, even if AutoSupport remains disabled.

## Using Active IQ

Active IQ is a cloud-based digital advisor that leverages predictive analytics and community wisdom from NetApp’s installed base. Its continuous risk assessments, predictive alerts, prescriptive guidance, and automated actions help you prevent problems before they occur, leading to improved system health and higher system availability.

You must enable AutoSupport if you want to use the Active IQ dashboards and functionality on the NetApp Support site.

[Active IQ Digital Advisor Documentation](#)

## Accessing AutoSupport settings

You configure AutoSupport using the Grid Manager (**Support > Tools > AutoSupport**). The **AutoSupport** page has two tabs: **Settings** and **Results**.



## AutoSupport

The AutoSupport feature enables your StorageGRID system to send periodic and event-driven health and status messages to technical support to allow proactive monitoring and troubleshooting. StorageGRID AutoSupport also enables the use of Active IQ for predictive recommendations.

Settings

Results

---

### Protocol Details

Protocol ?

☒ HTTPS ☐ HTTP ☐ SMTP

NetApp Support Certificate Validation ?

Use NetApp support certificate ▼

---

### AutoSupport Details

Enable Weekly AutoSupport ?

☒

Enable Event-Triggered AutoSupport ?

☒

Enable AutoSupport on Demand ?

☐

---

### Additional AutoSupport Destination

Enable Additional AutoSupport Destination ?

☐

Save

Send User-Triggered AutoSupport

## Protocols for sending AutoSupport messages

You can choose one of three protocols for sending AutoSupport messages:

- HTTPS
- HTTP
- SMTP

If you send AutoSupport messages using HTTPS or HTTP, you can configure a non-transparent proxy server between Admin Nodes and technical support.

If you use SMTP as the protocol for AutoSupport messages, you must configure an SMTP mail server.

## AutoSupport options

You can use any combination of the following options to send AutoSupport messages to technical support:

- **Weekly:** Automatically send AutoSupport messages once per week. Default setting: Enabled.
- **Event-triggered:** Automatically send AutoSupport messages every hour or when significant system events occur. Default setting: Enabled.
- **On Demand:** Allow technical support to request that your StorageGRID system send AutoSupport messages automatically, which is useful when they are actively working an issue (requires HTTPS AutoSupport transmission protocol). Default setting: Disabled.
- **User-triggered:** Manually send AutoSupport messages at any time.

## Related information



## Specifying the protocol for AutoSupport messages

You can use one of three protocols for sending AutoSupport messages.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access or Other Grid Configuration permission.
- If you will use the HTTPS or HTTP protocol for sending AutoSupport messages, you must have provided outbound internet access to the primary Admin Node, either directly or using a proxy server (inbound connections not required).
- If you will use the HTTPS or HTTP protocol and you want to use a proxy server, you must have configured an Admin proxy server.
- If you will use SMTP as the protocol for AutoSupport messages, you must have configured an SMTP mail server. The same mail server configuration is used for alarm email notifications (legacy system).

### About this task

AutoSupport messages can be sent using any of the following protocols:

- **HTTPS:** This is the default and recommended setting for new installations. The HTTPS protocol uses port 443. If you want to enable the AutoSupport on Demand feature, you must use the HTTPS protocol.
- **HTTP:** This protocol is not secure, unless it is used in a trusted environment where the proxy server converts to HTTPS when sending data over the internet. The HTTP protocol uses port 80.
- **SMTP:** Use this option if you want AutoSupport messages to be emailed. If you use SMTP as the protocol for AutoSupport messages, you must configure an SMTP mail server on the Legacy Email Setup page (**Support > Alarms (legacy) > Legacy Email Setup**).



SMTP was the only protocol available for AutoSupport messages before the StorageGRID 11.2 release. If you installed an earlier version of StorageGRID initially, SMTP might be the selected protocol.

The protocol you set is used for sending all types of AutoSupport messages.

### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > AutoSupport**.

The AutoSupport page appears, and the **Settings** tab is selected.

2. Select the protocol you want to use to send AutoSupport messages.



Settings

Results

---

### Protocol Details

Protocol ?

☒ HTTPS
 ☐ HTTP
 ☐ SMTP

NetApp Support Certificate Validation ?

Use NetApp support certificate

Use NetApp support certificate

Do not verify certificate

---

### AutoSupport Details

Enable Weekly AutoSupport ?

☒

Enable Event-Triggered AutoSupport ?

☐

Enable AutoSupport on Demand ?

☐

---

### Additional AutoSupport Destination

Enable Additional AutoSupport Destination ?

☐

Save

Send User-Triggered AutoSupport

### 3. Select your choice for **Netapp Support Certificate Validation**.

- Use NetApp support certificate (default): Certificate validation ensures that the transmission of AutoSupport messages is secure. The NetApp support certificate is already installed with the StorageGRID software.
- Do not verify certificate: Select this choice only when you have a good reason not to use certificate validation, such as when there is a temporary problem with a certificate.

### 4. Select **Save**.

All weekly, user-triggered, and event-triggered messages are sent using the selected protocol.

### Related information

[Configuring Admin proxy settings](#)

## Enabling AutoSupport on Demand

AutoSupport on Demand can assist in solving issues that technical support is actively working on. When you enable AutoSupport on Demand, technical support can request that AutoSupport messages be sent without the need for your intervention.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access or Other Grid Configuration permission.
- You must have enabled weekly AutoSupport messages.
- You must have set the transport protocol to HTTPS.

### About this task

When you enable this feature, technical support can request that your StorageGRID system send AutoSupport messages automatically. Technical support can also set the polling time interval for AutoSupport on Demand



queries.

Technical support cannot enable or disable AutoSupport on Demand.

## Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > AutoSupport**.

The AutoSupport page appears with the **Settings** tab selected.

2. Select the HTTPS radio button in the **Protocol Details** section of the page.

The screenshot shows the 'AutoSupport Settings' page. At the top, there are two tabs: 'Settings' (selected) and 'Results'. Below the tabs is the 'Protocol Details' section, which includes a 'Protocol' dropdown menu with three options: 'HTTPS' (selected and highlighted with a yellow box), 'HTTP', and 'SMTP'. Below this is a 'NetApp Support Certificate Validation' dropdown menu with the option 'Use NetApp support certificate'. The 'AutoSupport Details' section follows, containing three checkboxes: 'Enable Weekly AutoSupport' (checked and highlighted with a yellow box), 'Enable Event-Triggered AutoSupport' (unchecked), and 'Enable AutoSupport on Demand' (checked and highlighted with a yellow box). Below these is the 'Additional AutoSupport Destination' section, which includes a checkbox for 'Enable Additional AutoSupport Destination' (unchecked). At the bottom of the page are two buttons: 'Save' (highlighted with a blue box) and 'Send User-Triggered AutoSupport'.

3. Select the **Enable Weekly AutoSupport** check box.
4. Select the **Enable AutoSupport on Demand** check box.
5. Select **Save**.

AutoSupport on Demand is enabled, and technical support can send AutoSupport on Demand requests to StorageGRID.

## Disabling weekly AutoSupport messages

By default, the StorageGRID system is configured to send an AutoSupport message to NetApp Support once a week.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access or Other Grid Configuration permission.

### About this task

To determine when the weekly AutoSupport message is sent, see the **Next Scheduled Time** under **Weekly AutoSupport** on the **AutoSupport > Results** page.



**Weekly AutoSupport**

Next Scheduled Time ⓘ 2021-02-12 00:20:00 EST

Most Recent Result ⓘ Idle (NetApp Support)

Last Successful Time ⓘ N/A (NetApp Support)

You can disable the automatic sending of an AutoSupport message at any time.

**Steps**

1. Select **Support > Tools > AutoSupport**.

The AutoSupport page appears with the **Settings** tab selected.

2. Clear the **Enable Weekly AutoSupport** check box.

**Protocol Details**

Protocol ⓘ

☒ HTTPS☐ HTTP☐ SMTP

NetApp Support Certificate Validation ⓘ

Use NetApp support certificate ▼

**AutoSupport Details**

Enable Weekly AutoSupport ⓘ

☐

Enable Event-Triggered AutoSupport ⓘ

☐

AutoSupport On Demand can only be enabled when the protocol is HTTPS and Weekly AutoSupport is enabled. When you enable AutoSupport on Demand, technical support can request that your StorageGRID system send AutoSupport messages automatically.

**Additional AutoSupport Destination**

Enable Additional AutoSupport Destination ⓘ

☐

Save

Send User-Triggered AutoSupport

3. Select **Save**.

**Disabling event-triggered AutoSupport messages**

By default, the StorageGRID system is configured to send an AutoSupport message to NetApp Support when an important alert or other significant system event occurs.

**What you'll need**

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.



- You must have the Root Access or Other Grid Configuration permission.

### About this task

You can disable event-triggered AutoSupport messages at any time.



Event-triggered AutoSupport messages are also suppressed when you suppress email notifications system wide. (Select **Configuration** > **System Settings** > **Display Options**. Then, select **Notification Suppress All**.)

### Steps

1. Select **Support** > **Tools** > **AutoSupport**.

The AutoSupport page appears with the **Settings** tab selected.

2. Clear the **Enable Event-Triggered AutoSupport** check box.

The screenshot shows the 'AutoSupport Settings' page. At the top, there are two tabs: 'Settings' (selected) and 'Results'. Below the tabs is a section titled 'Protocol Details'. It includes a 'Protocol' dropdown menu with radio buttons for 'HTTPS' (selected), 'HTTP', and 'SMTP'. Below this is a 'NetApp Support Certificate Validation' dropdown menu with the option 'Use NetApp support certificate'. The next section is 'AutoSupport Details', which contains two checkboxes: 'Enable Weekly AutoSupport' (checked) and 'Enable Event-Triggered AutoSupport' (unchecked, highlighted with a yellow box). Below these checkboxes is a light blue informational box stating: 'AutoSupport On Demand can only be enabled when the protocol is HTTPS and Weekly AutoSupport is enabled. When you enable AutoSupport on Demand, technical support can request that your StorageGRID system send AutoSupport messages automatically.' The final section is 'Additional AutoSupport Destination', which includes a checkbox for 'Enable Additional AutoSupport Destination' (unchecked). At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Save' and 'Send User-Triggered AutoSupport'.

3. Select **Save**.

## Manually triggering an AutoSupport message

To assist technical support in troubleshooting issues with your StorageGRID system, you can manually trigger an AutoSupport message to be sent.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access or Other Grid Configuration permission.

### Steps

1. Select **Support** > **Tools** > **AutoSupport**.



The AutoSupport page appears with the **Settings** tab selected.

2. Select **Send User-Triggered AutoSupport**.

StorageGRID attempts to send an AutoSupport message to technical support. If the attempt is successful, the **Most Recent Result** and **Last Successful Time** values on the **Results** tab are updated. If there is a problem, the **Most Recent Result** value updates to "Failed," and StorageGRID does not try to send the AutoSupport message again.



After sending an User-triggered AutoSupport message, refresh the AutoSupport page in your browser after 1 minute to access the most recent results.

## Adding an additional AutoSupport destination

When you enable AutoSupport, health and status messages are sent to NetApp support. You can specify one additional destinations for all AutoSupport messages.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have the Root Access or Other Grid Configuration permission.

### About this task

To verify or change the protocol used to send AutoSupport messages, see the instructions for specifying an AutoSupport protocol.



You cannot use the SMTP protocol to send AutoSupport messages to an additional destination.

### Specifying the protocol for AutoSupport messages

#### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > AutoSupport**.


The AutoSupport page appears with the **Settings** tab selected.


2. Select **Enable additional AutoSupport destination**.


The Additional AutoSupport Destination fields appear.




### Additional AutoSupport Destination

Enable Additional AutoSupport Destination  ☒

Hostname 

Port 

Certificate Validation 

You are not using a TLS certificate to secure the connection to the additional AutoSupport destination.

Save

Send User-Triggered AutoSupport


3. Enter the server hostname or IP address of an additional AutoSupport destination server.





You can enter only one additional destination.


4. Enter the port used to connect to an additional AutoSupport destination server (default is port 80 for HTTP or port 443 for HTTPS).
5. To send your AutoSupport messages with certificate validation, select **Use custom CA bundle** in the **Certificate Validation** drop-down. Then, do one of the following:
  - Use an editing tool to copy and paste all the contents of each of the PEM-encoded CA certificate files into the **CA bundle** field, concatenated in certificate chain order. You must include `-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----` and `-----END CERTIFICATE-----` in your selection.


### Additional AutoSupport Destination

Enable Additional AutoSupport Destination  ☒

Hostname 

Port 

Certificate Validation 

CA Bundle   

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----  
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz123456780ABCDEFGHIJKL  
123456/7890ABCDEFabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzABCD  
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

- Select **Browse**, navigate to the file containing the certificates, and then select **Open** to upload the file. Certificate validation ensures that the transmission of AutoSupport messages is secure.

6. To send your AutoSupport messages without certificate validation, select **Do not verify certificate** in the



**Certificate Validation** drop-down.

Select this choice only when you have a good reason not to use certificate validation, such as when there is a temporary problem with a certificate.

A caution message appears: "You are not using a TLS certificate to secure the connection to the additional AutoSupport destination."

7. Select **Save**.

All future weekly, event-triggered, and user-triggered AutoSupport messages will be sent to the additional destination.

## Sending E-Series AutoSupport messages through StorageGRID

You can send E-Series SANtricity System Manager AutoSupport messages to technical support through a StorageGRID Admin Node rather than the storage appliance's management port.

### What you'll need

- You are signed into the Grid Manager using a supported web browser.
- You have the Storage Appliance Administrator permission or Root Access permission.



You must have SANtricity firmware 8.70 or higher to access SANtricity System Manager using the Grid Manager.

### About this task

E-Series AutoSupport messages contain details of the storage hardware and are more specific than other AutoSupport messages sent by the StorageGRID system.

Configure a special proxy server address in SANtricity System Manager to cause the AutoSupport messages to be transmitted through a StorageGRID Admin Node without the use of the appliance's management port. AutoSupport messages transmitted in this way respect the Preferred Sender and Admin proxy settings which may have been configured in the Grid Manager.

If you want to configure the Admin proxy server in Grid Manager, see the instructions for configuring Admin proxy settings.

### Configuring Admin proxy settings



This procedure is only for configuring a StorageGRID proxy server for E-Series AutoSupport messages. For additional details on E-Series AutoSupport configuration information, see the E-Series documentation center.

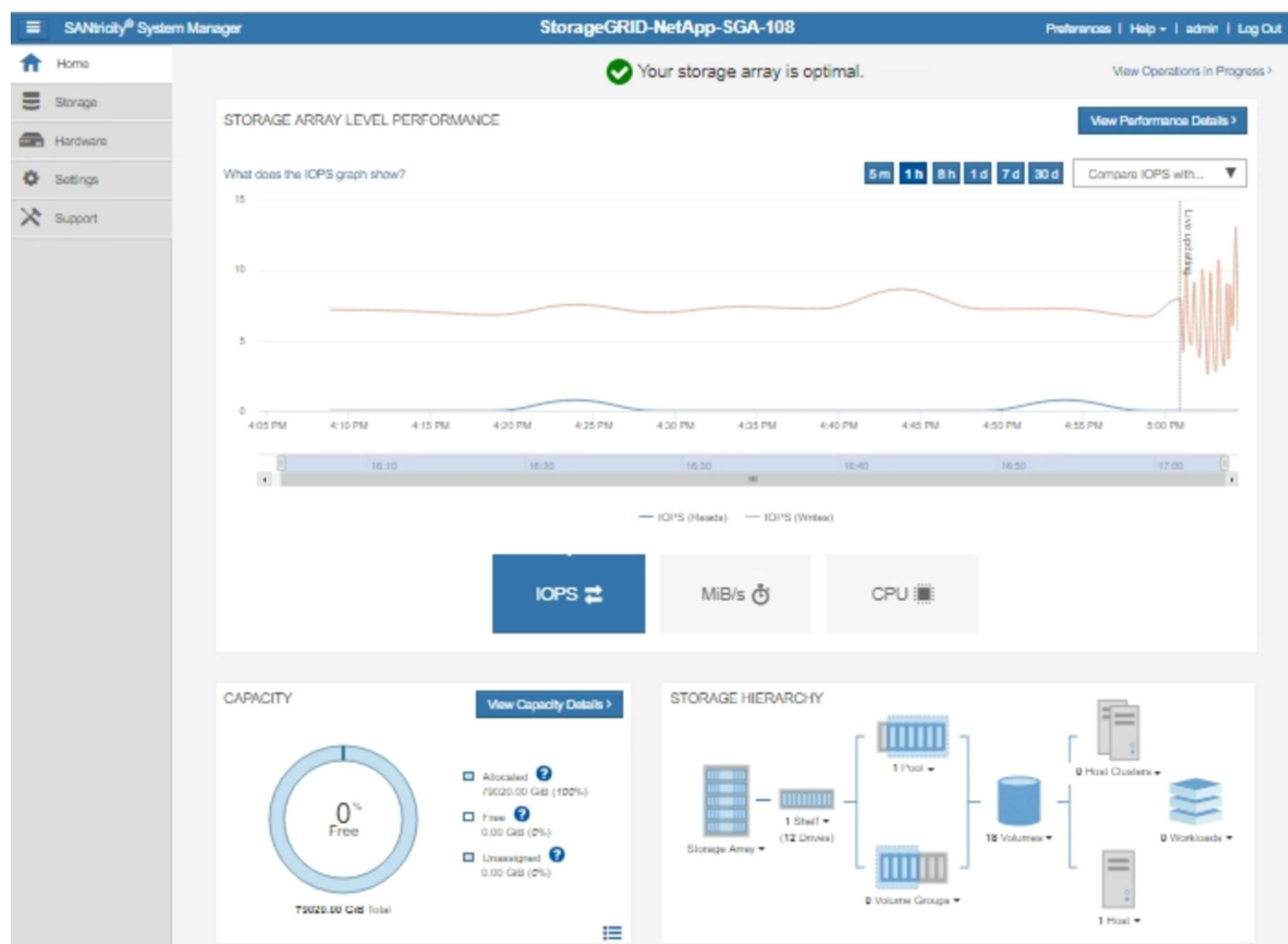
[NetApp E-Series Systems Documentation Center](#)

### Steps

1. In the Grid Manager, select **Nodes**.
2. From the list of nodes on the left, select the storage appliance node you want to configure.
3. Select **SANtricity System Manager**.



The SANtricity System Manager home page appears.




4. Select **Support** > **Support center** > **AutoSupport**.

The AutoSupport operations page appears.



Technical Support

Chassis serial number: 031517000693

 [NetApp My Support](#)

US/Canada 888.463.8277


[Other Contacts](#)

Support Resources

Diagnostics

AutoSupport

AutoSupport operations

AutoSupport status: Enabled 

[Enable/Disable AutoSupport Features](#)

AutoSupport proactively monitors the health of your storage array and automatically sends support data ("dispatches") to the support team.

[Configure AutoSupport Delivery Method](#)

Connect to the support team via HTTPS, HTTP or Mail (SMTP) server delivery methods.

[Schedule AutoSupport Dispatches](#)

AutoSupport dispatches are sent daily at 03:06 PM UTC and weekly at 07:39 AM UTC on Thursday.

[Send AutoSupport Dispatch](#)

Automatically sends the support team a dispatch to troubleshoot system issues without waiting for periodic dispatches.

[View AutoSupport Log](#)

The AutoSupport log provides information about status, dispatch history, and errors encountered during delivery of AutoSupport dispatches.

[Enable AutoSupport Maintenance Window](#)

Enable AutoSupport Maintenance window to allow maintenance activities to be performed on the storage array without generating support cases.

[Disable AutoSupport Maintenance Window](#)

Disable AutoSupport Maintenance window to allow the storage array to generate support cases on component failures and other destructive actions.

5. Select **Configure AutoSupport Delivery Method**.

The Configure AutoSupport Delivery Method page appears.



6. Select **HTTPS** for the delivery method.



The certificate that enables the HTTPS protocol is pre-installed.

7. Select **via Proxy server**.

8. Enter `tunnel-host` for the **Host address**.

`tunnel-host` is the special address to use an Admin Node to send E-Series AutoSupport messages.

9. Enter `10225` for the **Port number**.

`10225` is the port number on the StorageGRID proxy server that receives AutoSupport messages from the E-Series controller in the appliance.

10. Select **Test Configuration** to test the routing and configuration of your AutoSupport proxy server.

If correct, a message in a green banner appears: "Your AutoSupport configuration has been verified."

If the test fails, an error message appears in a red banner. Check your StorageGRID DNS settings and



networking, ensure the preferred sender Admin Node can connect to the NetApp support site, and try the test again.

11. Select **Save**.

The configuration is saved, and a confirmation message appears: "AutoSupport delivery method has been configured."

## Troubleshooting AutoSupport messages

If an attempt to send an AutoSupport message fails, the StorageGRID system takes different actions depending on the type of AutoSupport message. You can check the status of AutoSupport messages by selecting **Support > Tools > AutoSupport > Results**.



Event-triggered AutoSupport messages are suppressed when you suppress email notifications system wide. (Select **Configuration > System Settings > Display Options**. Then, select **Notification Suppress All**.)

When the AutoSupport message fails to send, "Failed" appears on the **Results** tab of the **AutoSupport** page.



## AutoSupport

The AutoSupport feature enables your StorageGRID system to send periodic and event-driven health and status messages to technical support to allow proactive monitoring and troubleshooting. StorageGRID AutoSupport also enables the use of Active IQ for predictive recommendations.

Settings

Results

### Weekly AutoSupport

Next Scheduled Time ? 2020-12-11 23:30:00 EST

Most Recent Result ? Idle (NetApp Support)

Last Successful Time ? N/A (NetApp Support)

### Event-Triggered AutoSupport

Most Recent Result ? N/A (NetApp Support)

Last Successful Time ? N/A (NetApp Support)

### User-Triggered AutoSupport

Most Recent Result ? Failed (NetApp Support)

Last Successful Time ? N/A (NetApp Support)

### AutoSupport On Demand

AutoSupport On Demand messages are only sent to NetApp Support.

Most Recent Result ? N/A (NetApp Support)

Last Successful Time ? N/A (NetApp Support)

## Weekly AutoSupport message failure

If a weekly AutoSupport message fails to send, the StorageGRID system takes the following actions:

1. Updates the Most Recent Result attribute to Retrying.
2. Attempts to resend the AutoSupport message 15 times every four minutes for one hour.
3. After one hour of send failures, updates the Most Recent Result attribute to Failed.
4. Attempts to send an AutoSupport message again at the next scheduled time.
5. Maintains the regular AutoSupport schedule if the message fails because the NMS service is unavailable, and if a message is sent before seven days pass.
6. When the NMS service is available again, sends an AutoSupport message immediately if a message has not been sent for seven days or more.



## User-triggered or event-triggered AutoSupport message failure

If a user-triggered or an event-triggered AutoSupport message fails to send, the StorageGRID system takes the following actions:

1. Displays an error message if the error is known. For example, if a user selects the SMTP protocol without providing correct email configuration settings, the following error is displayed: AutoSupport messages cannot be sent using SMTP protocol due to incorrect settings on the E-mail Server page.
2. Does not attempt to send the message again.
3. Logs the error in `nms.log`.

If a failure occurs and SMTP is the selected protocol, verify that the StorageGRID system's email server is correctly configured and that your email server is running (**Support > Alarms (legacy) > > Legacy Email Setup**). The following error message might appear on the AutoSupport page: AutoSupport messages cannot be sent using SMTP protocol due to incorrect settings on the E-mail Server page.

Learn how to configure email server settings in the [monitor & troubleshoot instructions](#).

## Correcting an AutoSupport message failure

If a failure occurs and SMTP is the selected protocol, verify that the StorageGRID system's email server is correctly configured and that your email server is running. The following error message might appear on the AutoSupport page: AutoSupport messages cannot be sent using SMTP protocol due to incorrect settings on the E-mail Server page.

### Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

# Managing Storage Nodes

Storage Nodes provide disk storage capacity and services. Managing Storage Nodes entails monitoring the amount of usable space on each node, using watermark settings, and applying Storage Node configuration settings.

- [What a Storage Node is](#)
- [Managing Storage Options](#)
- [Managing object metadata storage](#)
- [Configuring global settings for stored objects](#)
- [Storage Node configuration settings](#)
- [Managing full Storage Nodes](#)

## What a Storage Node is

Storage Nodes manage and store object data and metadata. Each StorageGRID system must have at least three Storage Nodes. If you have multiple sites, each site within your StorageGRID system must also have three Storage Nodes.



A Storage Node includes the services and processes required to store, move, verify, and retrieve object data and metadata on disk. You can view detailed information about the Storage Nodes on the **Nodes** page.

### **What the ADC service is**

The Administrative Domain Controller (ADC) service authenticates grid nodes and their connections with each other. The ADC service is hosted on each of the first three Storage Nodes at a site.

The ADC service maintains topology information including the location and availability of services. When a grid node requires information from another grid node or an action to be performed by another grid node, it contacts an ADC service to find the best grid node to process its request. In addition, the ADC service retains a copy of the StorageGRID deployment's configuration bundles, allowing any grid node to retrieve current configuration information. You can view ADC information for a Storage Node on the Grid Topology page (**Support > Grid Topology**).

To facilitate distributed and islanded operations, each ADC service synchronizes certificates, configuration bundles, and information about services and topology with the other ADC services in the StorageGRID system.

In general, all grid nodes maintain a connection to at least one ADC service. This ensures that grid nodes are always accessing the latest information. When grid nodes connect, they cache other grid nodes' certificates, enabling systems to continue functioning with known grid nodes even when an ADC service is unavailable. New grid nodes can only establish connections by using an ADC service.

The connection of each grid node lets the ADC service gather topology information. This grid node information includes the CPU load, available disk space (if it has storage), supported services, and the grid node's site ID. Other services ask the ADC service for topology information through topology queries. The ADC service responds to each query with the latest information received from the StorageGRID system.

### **What the DDS service is**

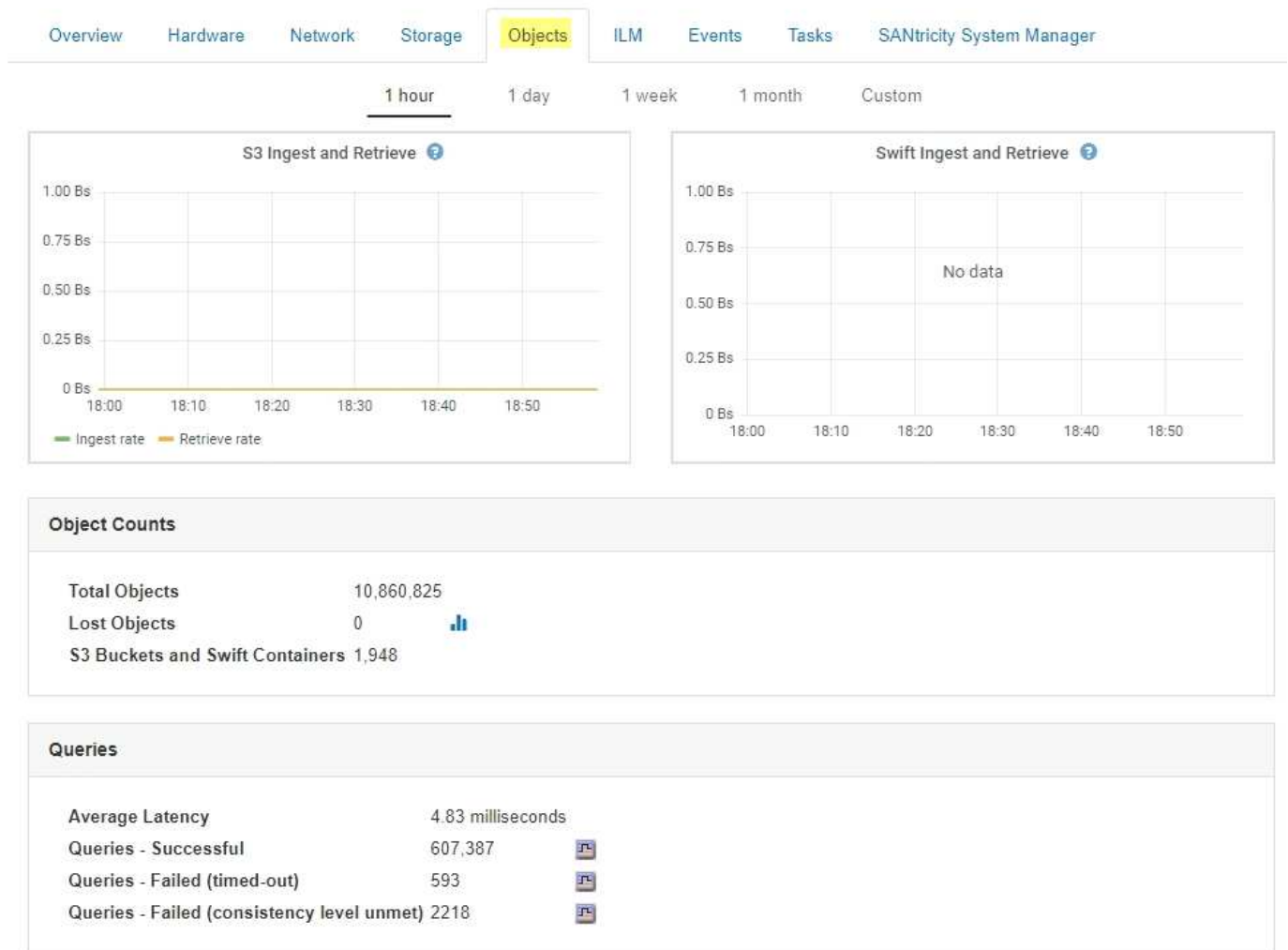
Hosted by a Storage Node, the Distributed Data Store (DDS) service interfaces with the Cassandra database to perform background tasks on the object metadata stored in the StorageGRID system.

#### **Object counts**

The DDS service tracks the total number of objects ingested into the StorageGRID system as well as the total number of objects ingested through each of the system's supported interfaces (S3 or Swift).

You can see the Total Objects count on the Nodes page > Objects tab for any Storage Node.





## Queries

You can identify the average time that it takes to run a query against the metadata store through the specific DDS service, the total number of successful queries, and the total number of queries that failed because of a timeout issue.

You might want to review query information to monitor the health of the metadata store, Cassandra, which impacts the system's ingest and retrieval performance. For example, if the latency for an average query is slow and the number of failed queries due to timeouts is high, the metadata store might be encountering a higher load or performing another operation.

You can also view the total number of queries that failed because of consistency failures. Consistency level failures result from an insufficient number of available metadata stores at the time a query is performed through the specific DDS service.

You can use the Diagnostics page to obtain additional information on the current state of your grid. See [Running diagnostics](#).

## Consistency guarantees and controls

StorageGRID guarantees read-after-write consistency for newly created objects. Any GET operation following a successfully completed PUT operation will be able to read the newly written data. Overwrites of existing



objects, metadata updates, and deletes remain eventually consistent.

## What the LDR service is

Hosted by each Storage Node, the Local Distribution Router (LDR) service handles content transport for the StorageGRID system. Content transport encompasses many tasks including data storage, routing, and request handling. The LDR service does the majority of the StorageGRID system's hard work by handling data transfer loads and data traffic functions.

The LDR service handles the following tasks:

- Queries
- Information lifecycle management (ILM) activity
- Object deletion
- Object data storage
- Object data transfers from another LDR service (Storage Node)
- Data storage management
- Protocol interfaces (S3 and Swift)

The LDR service also manages the mapping of S3 and Swift objects to the unique “content handles” (UUIDs) that the StorageGRID system assigns to each ingested object.

### Queries

LDR queries include queries for object location during retrieve and archive operations. You can identify the average time that it takes to run a query, the total number of successful queries, and the total number of queries that failed because of a timeout issue.

You can review query information to monitor the health of the metadata store, which impacts the system's ingest and retrieval performance. For example, if the latency for an average query is slow and the number of failed queries due to timeouts is high, the metadata store might be encountering a higher load or performing another operation.

You can also view the total number of queries that failed because of consistency failures. Consistency level failures result from an insufficient number of available metadata stores at the time a query is performed through the specific LDR service.

You can use the Diagnostics page to obtain additional information on the current state of your grid. See [Running diagnostics](#).

### ILM activity

















































Information lifecycle management (ILM) metrics allow you to monitor the rate at which objects are evaluated for ILM implementation. You can view these metrics on the Dashboard or on the Nodes page > ILM tab for each Storage Node.

### Object stores

The underlying data storage of an LDR service is divided into a fixed number of object stores (also known as storage volumes). Each object store is a separate mount point.

You can see the object stores for a Storage Node on the Nodes page > Storage tab.



Object Stores									
ID	Size	Available		Replicated Data		EC Data	Object Data (%)	Health	
0000	4.40 TB	1.35 TB		43.99 GB		0 bytes		1.00%	No Errors
0001	1.97 TB	1.57 TB		44.76 GB		351.14 GB		20.09%	No Errors
0002	1.97 TB	1.46 TB		43.29 GB		465.20 GB		25.81%	No Errors
0003	1.97 TB	1.70 TB		43.51 GB		223.98 GB		13.58%	No Errors
0004	1.97 TB	1.92 TB		44.03 GB		0 bytes		2.23%	No Errors
0005	1.97 TB	1.46 TB		43.67 GB		463.36 GB		25.73%	No Errors
0006	1.97 TB	1.92 TB		43.10 GB		1.61 GB		2.27%	No Errors
0007	1.97 TB	1.35 TB		46.05 GB		575.24 GB		31.53%	No Errors
0008	1.97 TB	1.81 TB		46.00 GB		112.84 GB		8.06%	No Errors
0009	1.97 TB	1.57 TB		43.91 GB		352.72 GB		20.13%	No Errors
000A	1.97 TB	1.70 TB		44.31 GB		226.81 GB		13.76%	No Errors
000B	1.97 TB	1.92 TB		43.17 GB		780.07 MB		2.23%	No Errors
000C	1.97 TB	1.58 TB		44.32 GB		339.56 GB		19.48%	No Errors
000D	1.97 TB	1.82 TB		44.47 GB		107.34 GB		7.70%	No Errors
000E	1.97 TB	1.68 TB		43.07 GB		241.70 GB		14.45%	No Errors
000F	2.03 TB	1.50 TB		44.57 GB		475.47 GB		25.67%	No Errors

The object stores in a Storage Node are identified by a hexadecimal number from 0000 to 002F, which is known as the volume ID. Space is reserved in the first object store (volume 0) for object metadata in a Cassandra database; any remaining space on that volume is used for object data. All other object stores are used exclusively for object data, which includes replicated copies and erasure-coded fragments.

To ensure even space usage for replicated copies, object data for a given object is stored to one object store based on available storage space. When one or more object stores fill to capacity, the remaining object stores continue to store objects until there is no more room on the Storage Node.

### Metadata protection

Object metadata is information related to or a description of an object; for example, object modification time, or storage location. StorageGRID stores object metadata in a Cassandra database, which interfaces with the LDR service.

To ensure redundancy and thus protection against loss, three copies of object metadata are maintained at each site. The copies are evenly distributed across all Storage Nodes at each site. This replication is non-configurable and performed automatically.

### [Managing object metadata storage](#)

## Managing Storage Options

You can view and configure Storage Options using the Configuration menu in the Grid Manager. Storage Options include the object segmentation settings and the current values for storage watermarks. You can also view the S3 and Swift ports used by the deprecated CLB service on Gateway Nodes and by the LDR service on Storage Nodes.

For information on port assignments, see [Summary: IP addresses and ports for client connections](#).





Object Segmentation

Description	Settings
Segmentation	Enabled
Maximum Segment Size	1 GB

Storage Watermarks

Description	Settings
Storage Volume Read-Write Watermark	30 GB
Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark	10 GB
Storage Volume Hard Read-Only Watermark	5 GB
Metadata Reserved Space	3,000 GB

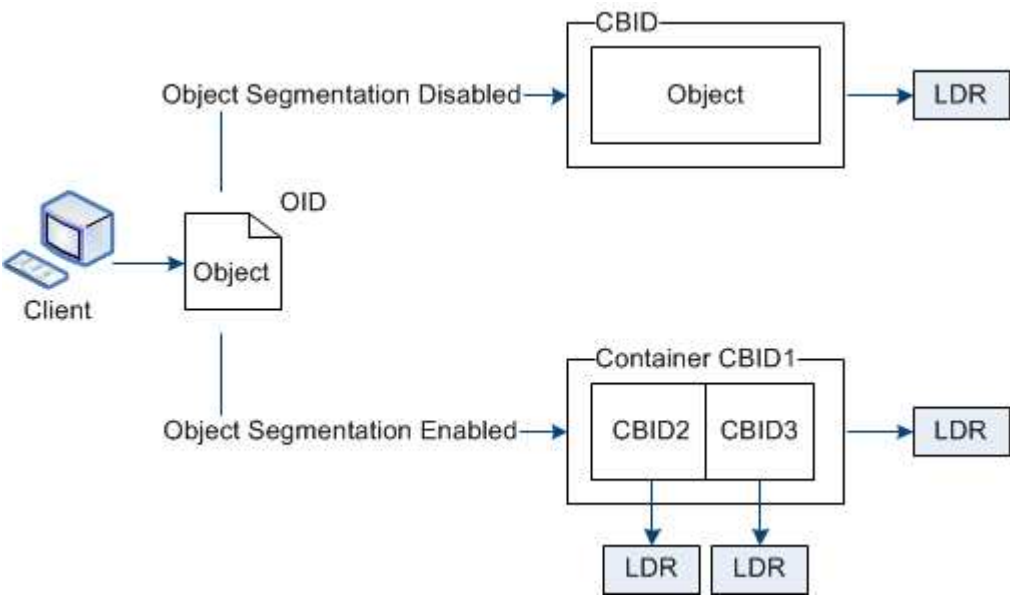
Ports

Description	Settings
CLB S3 Port	8082
CLB Swift Port	8083
LDR S3 Port	18082
LDR Swift Port	18083

What object segmentation is

Object segmentation is the process of splitting up an object into a collection of smaller fixed-size objects in order to optimize storage and resources usage for large objects. S3 multi-part upload also creates segmented objects, with an object representing each part.

When an object is ingested into the StorageGRID system, the LDR service splits the object into segments, and creates a segment container that lists the header information of all segments as content.



If your StorageGRID system includes an Archive Node whose Target Type is Cloud Tiering — Simple Storage Service and the targeted archival storage system is Amazon Web Services (AWS), the Maximum Segment Size must be less than or equal to 4.5 GiB (4,831,838,208 bytes). This upper limit ensures that the AWS PUT limitation of five GBs is not exceeded. Requests to AWS that exceed this value fail.



On retrieval of a segment container, the LDR service assembles the original object from its segments and returns the object to the client.

The container and segments are not necessarily stored on the same Storage Node. Container and segments can be stored on any Storage Node.

Each segment is treated by the StorageGRID system independently and contributes to the count of attributes such as Managed Objects and Stored Objects. For example, if an object stored to the StorageGRID system is split into two segments, the value of Managed Objects increases by three after the ingest is complete, as follows:

$$\text{segment container} + \text{segment 1} + \text{segment 2} = \text{three stored objects}$$

You can improve performance when handling large objects by ensuring that:

- Each Gateway and Storage Node has sufficient network bandwidth for the throughput required. For example, configure separate Grid and Client Networks on 10 Gbps Ethernet interfaces.
- Enough Gateway and Storage Nodes are deployed for the throughput required.
- Each Storage Node has sufficient disk IO performance for the throughput required.

**What Storage Volume watermarks are**

StorageGRID uses Storage Volume watermarks to allow you to monitor the amount of usable space available on Storage Nodes. If the amount of space available on a node is less than a configured watermark setting, the Storage Status (SSTS) alarm is triggered so that you can determine if you need to add Storage Nodes.

To view the current settings for the Storage Volume watermarks, select **Configuration > Storage Options > Overview**.



**Storage Options Overview**  
Updated: 2019-10-09 13:09:30 MDT

**Object Segmentation**

Description	Settings
Segmentation	Enabled
Maximum Segment Size	1 GB

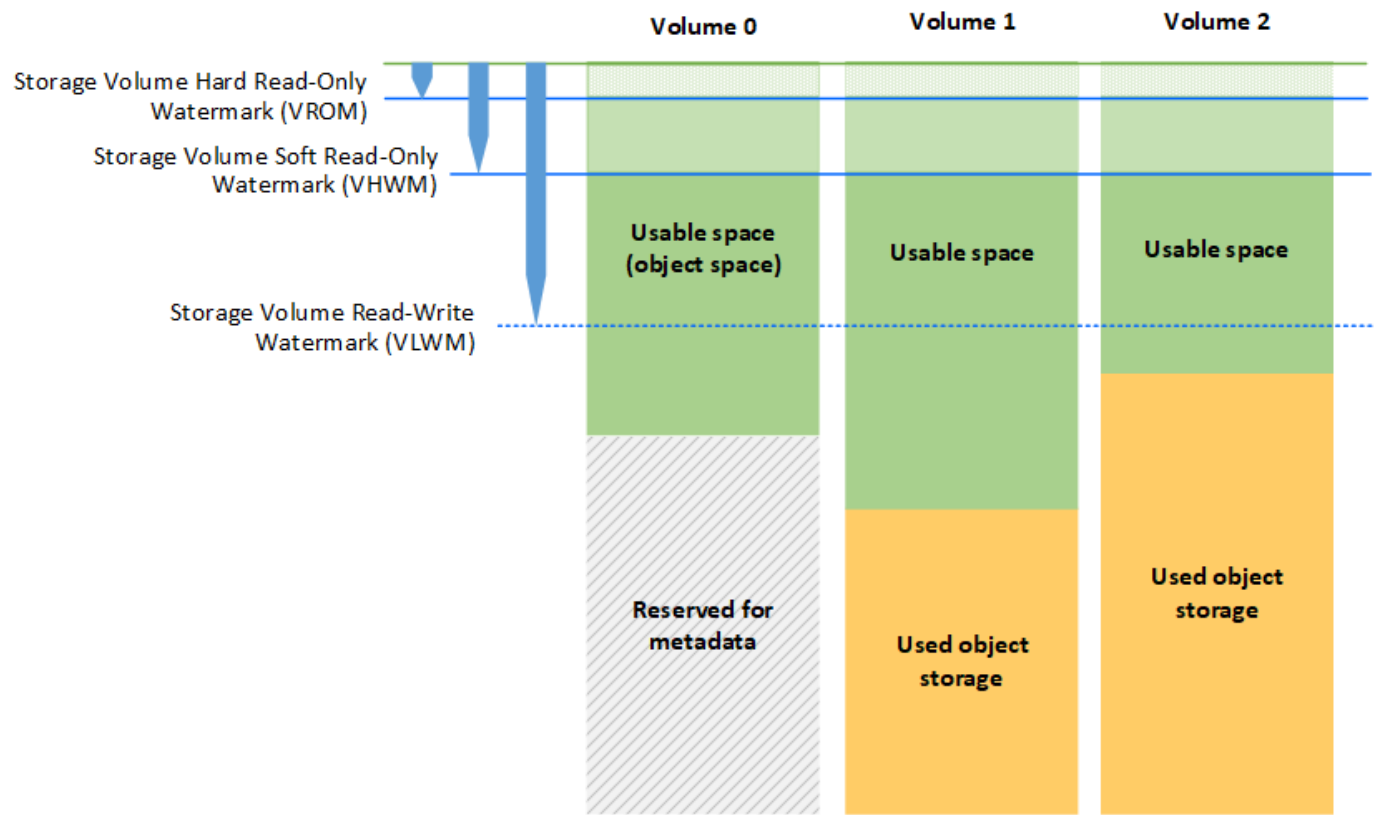
**Storage Watermarks**

Description	Settings
Storage Volume Read-Write Watermark	30 GB
Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark	10 GB
Storage Volume Hard Read-Only Watermark	5 GB
Metadata Reserved Space	3,000 GB

The following figure represents a Storage Node that has three volumes and shows the relative position of the three Storage Volume watermarks. Within each Storage Node, StorageGRID reserves space on volume 0 for



object metadata; any remaining space on that volume is used for object data. All other volumes are used exclusively for object data, which includes replicated copies and erasure-coded fragments.



The Storage Volume watermarks are system-wide defaults that indicate the minimum amount of free space required on each volume in the Storage Node to prevent StorageGRID from changing the node’s read-write behavior or triggering an alarm. Note that all volumes must reach the watermark before StorageGRID takes action. If some volumes have more than the minimum required amount of free space, the alarm is not triggered and the node’s read-write behavior does not change.

**Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark (VHWM)**

The Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark is the first watermark to indicate that a node’s usable space for object data is becoming full. This watermark represents how much free space must exist on every volume in a Storage Node to prevent the node from going into “soft read-only mode.” Soft read-only mode means that the Storage Node advertises read-only services to the rest of the StorageGRID system, but fulfills all pending write requests.

If the amount of free space on each volume is less than the setting of this watermark, the Storage Status (SSTS) alarm is triggered at the Notice level, and the Storage Node transitions to soft read-only mode.

For example, suppose the Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark is set to 10 GB, which is its default value. If less than 10 GB of free space remains on each volume in the Storage Node, the SSTS alarm is triggered at the Notice level, and the Storage Node transitions to soft read-only mode.



### **Storage Volume Hard Read-Only Watermark (VROM)**

The Storage Volume Hard Read-Only Watermark is the next watermark to indicate that a node's usable space for object data is becoming full. This watermark represents how much free space must exist on every volume in a Storage Node to prevent the node from going in to "hard read-only mode." Hard read-only mode means that the Storage Node is read-only and no longer accepts write requests.

If the amount of free space on every volume in a Storage Node is less than the setting of this watermark, the Storage Status (SSTS) alarm is triggered at the Major level, and the Storage Node transitions to hard read-only mode.

For example, suppose the Storage Volume Hard Read-Only Watermark is set to 5 GB, which is its default value. If less than 5 GB of free space remains on each storage volume in the Storage Node, the SSTS alarm is triggered at the Major level, and the Storage Node transitions to hard read-only mode.

The value of the Storage Volume Hard Read-Only Watermark must be less than the value of the Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark.

### **Storage Volume Read-Write Watermark (VLWM)**

The Storage Volume Read-Write Watermark only applies to Storage Nodes that have transitioned to read-only mode. This watermark determines when the Storage Node is allowed to become read-write again.

For example, suppose a Storage Node has transitioned to hard read-only mode. If the Storage Volume Read-Write Watermark is set to 30 GB (default), the free space on every storage volume in the Storage Node must increase from 5 GB to 30 GB before the node can become read-write again.

The value of the Storage Volume Read-Write Watermark must be greater than the value of the Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark.

### **Related information**

[Managing full Storage Nodes](#)

## **Managing object metadata storage**

The object metadata capacity of a StorageGRID system controls the maximum number of objects that can be stored on that system. To ensure that your StorageGRID system has adequate space to store new objects, you must understand where and how StorageGRID stores object metadata.

### **What is object metadata?**

Object metadata is any information that describes an object. StorageGRID uses object metadata to track the locations of all objects across the grid and to manage each object's lifecycle over time.

For an object in StorageGRID, object metadata includes the following types of information:

- System metadata, including a unique ID for each object (UUID), the object name, the name of the S3 bucket or Swift container, the tenant account name or ID, the logical size of the object, the date and time the object was first created, and the date and time the object was last modified.
- Any custom user metadata key-value pairs associated with the object.
- For S3 objects, any object tag key-value pairs associated with the object.

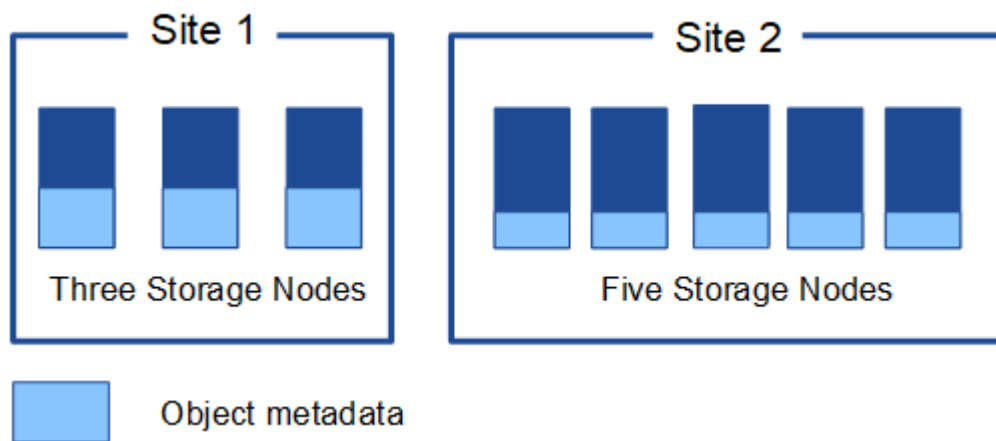


- For replicated object copies, the current storage location of each copy.
- For erasure-coded object copies, the current storage location of each fragment.
- For object copies in a Cloud Storage Pool, the location of the object, including the name of the external bucket and the object's unique identifier.
- For segmented objects and multipart objects, segment identifiers and data sizes.

### How is object metadata stored?

StorageGRID maintains object metadata in a Cassandra database, which is stored independently of object data. To provide redundancy and to protect object metadata from loss, StorageGRID stores three copies of the metadata for all objects in the system at each site. The three copies of object metadata are evenly distributed across all Storage Nodes at each site.

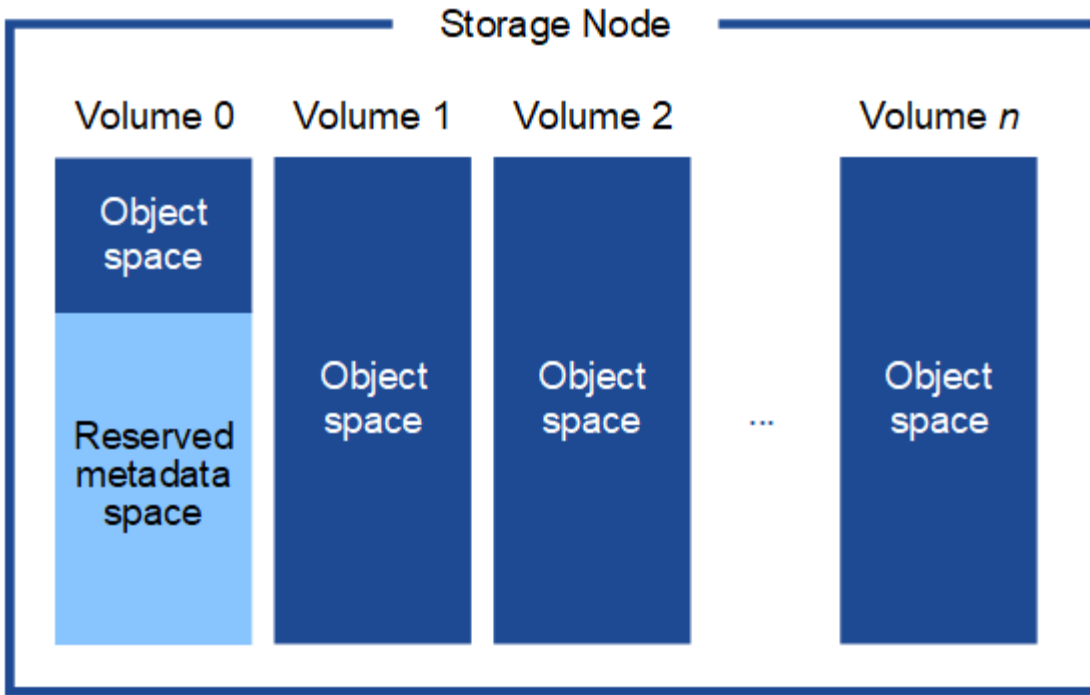
This figure represents the Storage Nodes at two sites. Each site has the same amount of object metadata, which is equally distributed across the Storage Nodes at that site.



### Where is object metadata stored?

This figure represents the storage volumes for a single Storage Node.





As shown in the figure, StorageGRID reserves space for object metadata on storage volume 0 of each Storage Node. It uses the reserved space to store object metadata and to perform essential database operations. Any remaining space on storage volume 0 and all other storage volumes in the Storage Node are used exclusively for object data (replicated copies and erasure-coded fragments).

The amount of space that is reserved for object metadata on a particular Storage Node depends on a number of factors, which are described below.

### Metadata Reserved Space setting

The *Metadata Reserved Space* is a system-wide setting that represents the amount of space that will be reserved for metadata on volume 0 of every Storage Node. As shown in the table, the default value of this setting for StorageGRID 11.5 is based the following:

- The software version you were using when you initially installed StorageGRID.
- The amount of RAM on each Storage Node.

Version used for initial StorageGRID installation	Amount of RAM on Storage Nodes	Default Metadata Reserved Space setting for StorageGRID 11.5
11.5	128 GB or more on each Storage Node in the grid	8 TB (8,000 GB)
	Less than 128 GB on any Storage Node in the grid	3 TB (3,000 GB)
11.1 to 11.4	128 GB or more on each Storage Node at any one site	4 TB (4,000 GB)



Version used for initial StorageGRID installation	Amount of RAM on Storage Nodes	Default Metadata Reserved Space setting for StorageGRID 11.5
	Less than 128 GB on any Storage Node at each site	3 TB (3,000 GB)
11.0 or earlier	Any amount	2 TB (2,000 GB)

To view the Metadata Reserved Space setting for your StorageGRID system:

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Storage Options**.
2. In the Storage Watermarks table, locate **Metadata Reserved Space**.



## Storage Options Overview

Updated: 2021-02-23 11:58:33 MST

### Object Segmentation

Description	Settings
Segmentation	Enabled
Maximum Segment Size	1 GB

### Storage Watermarks

Description	Settings
Storage Volume Read-Write Watermark	30 GB
Storage Volume Soft Read-Only Watermark	10 GB
Storage Volume Hard Read-Only Watermark	5 GB
Metadata Reserved Space	8,000 GB

In the screenshot, the **Metadata Reserved Space** value is 8,000 GB (8 TB). This is the default setting for a new StorageGRID 11.5 installation in which each Storage Node has 128 GB or more of RAM.

### Actual reserved space for metadata

In contrast to the system-wide Metadata Reserved Space setting, the *actual reserved space* for object metadata is determined for each Storage Node. For any given Storage Node, the actual reserved space for metadata depends on the size of volume 0 for the node and the system-wide **Metadata Reserved Space** setting.

Size of volume 0 for the node	Actual reserved space for metadata
Less than 500 GB (non production use)	10% of volume 0



Size of volume 0 for the node	Actual reserved space for metadata
500 GB or more	<p>The smaller of these values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Volume 0</li> <li>• Metadata Reserved Space setting</li> </ul>

To view the actual reserved space for metadata on a particular Storage Node:

1. From the Grid Manager, select **Nodes > Storage Node**.
2. Select the **Storage** tab.
3. Hover your cursor over the Storage Used — Object Metadata chart and locate the **Actual reserved** value.



In the screenshot, the **Actual reserved** value is 8 TB. This screenshot is for a large Storage Node in a new StorageGRID 11.5 installation. Because the system-wide Metadata Reserved Space setting is smaller than volume 0 for this Storage Node, the actual reserved space for this node equals the Metadata Reserved Space setting.

The **Actual reserved** value corresponds to this Prometheus metric:

```
storagegrid_storage_utilization_metadata_reserved_bytes
```

### Example for actual reserved metadata space

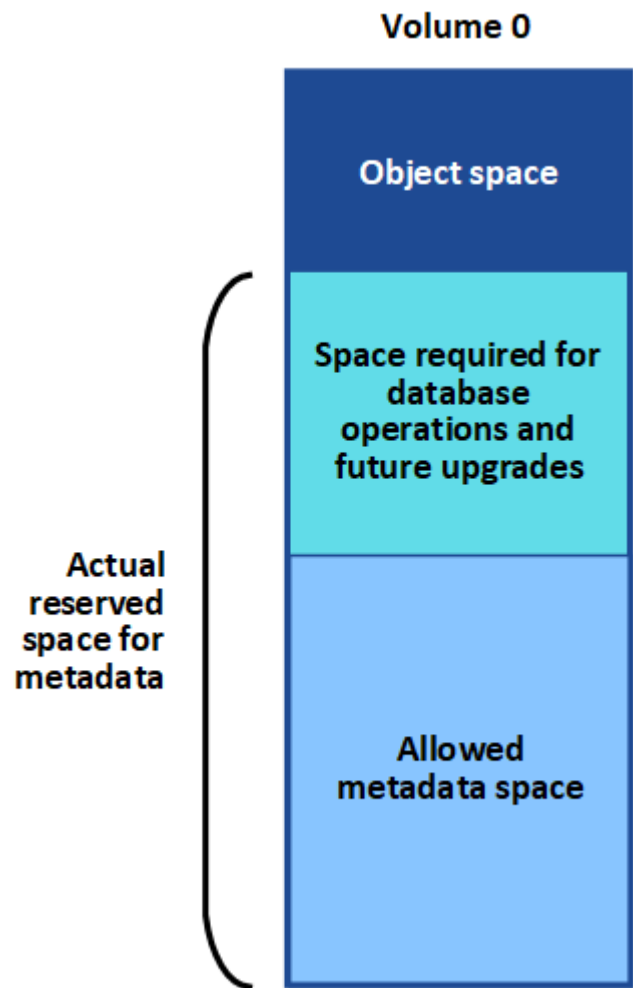
Suppose you install a new StorageGRID system using version 11.5. For this example, assume that each Storage Node has more than 128 GB of RAM and that volume 0 of Storage Node 1 (SN1) is 6 TB. Based on these values:

- The system-wide **Metadata Reserved Space** is set to 8 TB. (This is the default value for a new StorageGRID 11.5 installation if each Storage Node has more than 128 GB RAM.)
- The actual reserved space for metadata for SN1 is 6 TB. (The entire volume is reserved because volume 0 is smaller than the **Metadata Reserved Space** setting.)



Allowed metadata space

Each Storage Node’s actual reserved space for metadata is subdivided into the space available for object metadata (the *allowed metadata space*) and the space required for essential database operations (such as compaction and repair) and future hardware and software upgrades. The allowed metadata space governs overall object capacity.



The following table summarizes how StorageGRID determines the allowed metadata space value for a Storage Node.

Actual reserved space for metadata	Allowed metadata space
4 TB or less	60% of actual reserved space for metadata, up to a maximum of 1.98 TB
More than 4 TB	$(\text{Actual reserved space for metadata} - 1 \text{ TB}) \times 60\%$ , up to a maximum of 2.64 TB

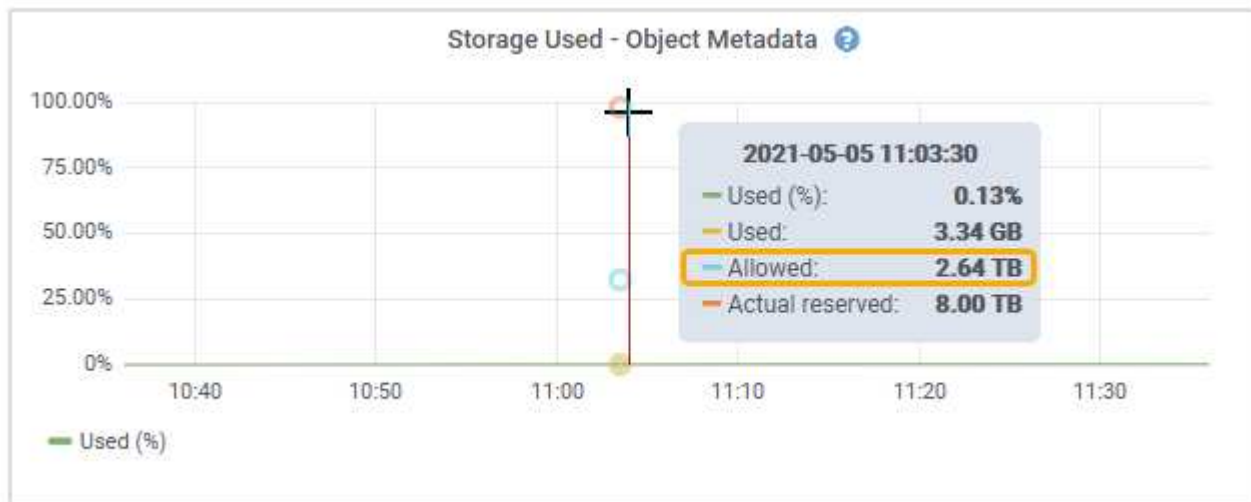


If your StorageGRID system stores (or is expected to store) more than 2.64 TB of metadata on any Storage Node, the allowed metadata space can be increased in some cases. If your Storage Nodes each have more than 128 GB of RAM and available free space on storage volume 0, contact your NetApp account representative. NetApp will review your requirements and increase the allowed metadata space for each Storage Node, if possible.



To view the allowed metadata space for a Storage Node:

1. From the Grid Manager, select **Node > Storage Node**.
2. Select the **Storage** tab.
3. Hover your cursor over the Storage Used — Object Metadata chart and locate the **Allowed** value.



In the screenshot, the **Allowed** value is 2.64 TB, which is the maximum value for a Storage Node whose actual reserved space for metadata is more than 4 TB.

The **Allowed** value corresponds to this Prometheus metric:

```
storagegrid_storage_utilization_metadata_allowed_bytes
```

### Example for allowed metadata space

Suppose you install a StorageGRID system using version 11.5. For this example, assume that each Storage Node has more than 128 GB of RAM and that volume 0 of Storage Node 1 (SN1) is 6 TB. Based on these values:

- The system-wide **Metadata Reserved Space** is set to 8 TB. (This is the default value for StorageGRID 11.5 when each Storage Node has more than 128 GB RAM.)
- The actual reserved space for metadata for SN1 is 6 TB. (The entire volume is reserved because volume 0 is smaller than the **Metadata Reserved Space** setting.)
- The allowed space for metadata on SN1 is 2.64 TB. (This is the maximum value for actual reserved space.)

### How Storage Nodes of different sizes affect object capacity

As described above, StorageGRID evenly distributes object metadata across the Storage Nodes at each site. For this reason, if a site contains Storage Nodes of different sizes, the smallest node at the site determines the site's metadata capacity.

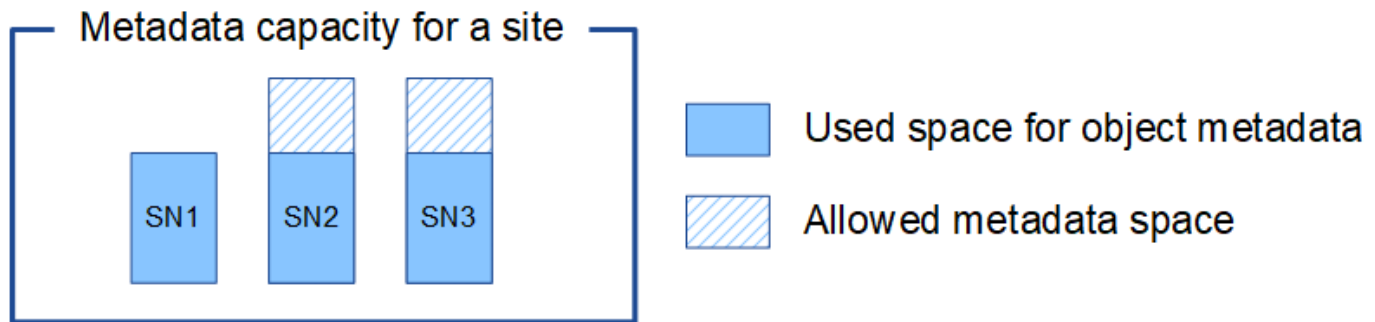
Consider the following example:



- You have a single-site grid containing three Storage Nodes of different sizes.
- The **Metadata Reserved Space** setting is 4 TB.
- The Storage Nodes have the following values for the actual reserved metadata space and the allowed metadata space.

Storage Node	Size of volume 0	Actual reserved metadata space	Allowed metadata space
SN1	2.2 TB	2.2 TB	1.32 TB
SN2	5 TB	4 TB	1.98 TB
SN3	6 TB	4 TB	1.98 TB

Because object metadata is evenly distributed across the Storage Nodes at a site, each node in this example can only hold 1.32 TB of metadata. The additional 0.66 TB of allowed metadata space for SN2 and SN3 cannot be used.



Similarly, because StorageGRID maintains all object metadata for a StorageGRID system at each site, the overall metadata capacity of a StorageGRID system is determined by the object metadata capacity of the smallest site.

And because object metadata capacity controls the maximum object count, when one node runs out of metadata capacity, the grid is effectively full.

#### Related information

- To learn how to monitor the object metadata capacity for each Storage Node:

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

- To increase the object metadata capacity for your system, you must add new Storage Nodes:

[Expand your grid](#)

## Configuring global settings for stored objects

You can use Grid Options to configure the settings for all of the objects stored in your StorageGRID system, including stored object compression, stored object encryption, and stored object hashing.



- [Configuring stored object compression](#)
- [Configuring stored object encryption](#)
- [Configuring stored object hashing](#)

## Configuring stored object compression

You can use the Compress Stored Objects grid option to reduce the size of objects stored in StorageGRID, so that objects consume less storage.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

The Compress Stored Objects grid option is disabled by default. If you enable this option, StorageGRID attempts to compress each object when saving it, using lossless compression.



If you change this setting, it will take about one minute for the new setting to be applied. The configured value is cached for performance and scaling.

Before enabling this option, be aware of the following:

- You should not enable compression unless you know that the data being stored is compressible.
- Applications that save objects to StorageGRID might compress objects before saving them. If a client application has already compressed an object before saving it to StorageGRID, enabling Compress Stored Objects will not further reduce an object's size.
- Do not enable compression if you are using NetApp FabricPool with StorageGRID.
- If the Compress Stored Objects grid option is enabled, S3 and Swift client applications should avoid performing GET Object operations that specify a range of bytes be returned. These "range read" operations are inefficient because StorageGRID must effectively uncompress the objects to access the requested bytes. GET Object operations that request a small range of bytes from a very large object are especially inefficient; for example, it is inefficient to read a 10 MB range from a 50 GB compressed object.

If ranges are read from compressed objects, client requests can time out.



If you need to compress objects and your client application must use range reads, increase the read timeout for the application.

### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Grid Options**.
2. In the Stored Object Options section, select the **Compress Stored Objects** check box.



## Stored Object Options



Compress Stored Objects ? 

Stored Object Encryption ? ☒ None ☐ AES-128 ☐ AES-256

Stored Object Hashing ? ☒ SHA-1 ☐ SHA-256

3. Click **Save**.

### Configuring stored object encryption

You can encrypt stored objects if you want to ensure that data cannot be retrieved in a readable form if an object store is compromised. By default, objects are not encrypted.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

#### About this task

Stored object encryption enables the encryption of all object data as it is ingested through S3 or Swift. When you enable the setting, all newly ingested objects are encrypted but no change is made to existing stored objects. If you disable encryption, currently encrypted objects remain encrypted but newly ingested objects are not encrypted.



If you change this setting, it will take about one minute for the new setting to be applied. The configured value is cached for performance and scaling.

Stored objects can be encrypted using the AES-128 or AES-256 encryption algorithm.

The Stored Object Encryption setting applies only to S3 objects that have not been encrypted by bucket-level or object-level encryption.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Grid Options**.
2. In the Stored Object Options section, change Stored Object Encryption to **None** (default), **AES-128**, or **AES-256**.

## Stored Object Options



Compress Stored Objects ? 

Stored Object Encryption ? ☒ None ☐ AES-128 ☐ AES-256

Stored Object Hashing ? ☒ SHA-1 ☐ SHA-256



3. Click **Save**.

### Configuring stored object hashing

The Stored Object Hashing option specifies the hashing algorithm used to verify object integrity.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

#### About this task

By default, object data is hashed using the SHA-1 algorithm. The SHA-256 algorithm requires additional CPU resources and is generally not recommended for integrity verification.



If you change this setting, it will take about one minute for the new setting to be applied. The configured value is cached for performance and scaling.

#### Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Grid Options**.
2. In the Stored Object Options section, change Stored Object Hashing to **SHA-1** (default) or **SHA-256**.

#### Stored Object Options

Compress Stored Objects ☐

Stored Object Encryption ☒ None ☐ AES-128 ☐ AES-256

Stored Object Hashing ☒ SHA-1 ☐ SHA-256

3. Click **Save**.

### Storage Node configuration settings

Each Storage Node uses a number of configuration settings and counters. You might need to view the current settings or reset counters to clear alarms (legacy system).



Except when specifically instructed in documentation, you should consult with technical support before modifying any Storage Node configuration settings. As required, you can reset event counters to clear legacy alarms.

To access a Storage Node's configuration settings and counters:

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **site > Storage Node**.
3. Expand the Storage Node and select the service or component.



4. Select the **Configuration** tab.

The following tables summarize Storage Node configuration settings.

## LDR

Attribute Name	Code	Description
HTTP State	HSTE	<p>The current state of the HTTP protocol for S3, Swift, and other internal StorageGRID traffic:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Offline: No operations are allowed, and any client application that attempts to open an HTTP session to the LDR service receives an error message. Active sessions are gracefully closed.</li><li>• Online: Operation continues normally</li></ul>
Auto-Start HTTP	HTAS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If selected, the state of the system on restart depends on the state of the <b>LDR &gt; Storage</b> component. If the <b>LDR &gt; Storage</b> component is Read-only on restart, the HTTP interface is also Read-only. If the <b>LDR &gt; Storage</b> component is Online, then HTTP is also Online. Otherwise, the HTTP interface remains in the Offline state.</li><li>• If not selected, the HTTP interface remains Offline until explicitly enabled.</li></ul>

## LDR > Data Store

Attribute Name	Code	Description
Reset Lost Objects Count	RCOR	Reset the counter for the number of lost objects on this service.

## LDR > Storage



Attribute Name	Code	Description
Storage State — Desired	SSDS	<p>A user-configurable setting for the desired state of the storage component. The LDR service reads this value and attempts to match the status indicated by this attribute. The value is persistent across restarts.</p> <p>For example, you can use this setting to force storage to become read-only even when there is ample available storage space. This can be useful for troubleshooting.</p> <p>The attribute can take one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Offline: When the desired state is Offline, the LDR service takes the <b>LDR &gt; Storage</b> component offline.</li> <li>• Read-only: When the desired state is Read-only, the LDR service moves the storage state to read-only and stops accepting new content. Note that content might continue to be saved to the Storage Node for a short time until open sessions are closed.</li> <li>• Online: Leave the value at Online during normal system operations. The Storage State — Current of the storage component will be dynamically set by the service based on the condition of the LDR service, such as the amount of available object storage space. If space is low, the component becomes Read-only.</li> </ul>
Health Check Timeout	SHCT	The time limit in seconds within which a health check test must complete in order for a storage volume to be considered healthy. Only change this value when directed to do so by Support.

## LDR > Verification

Attribute Name	Code	Description
Reset Missing Objects Count	VCMI	Resets the count of Missing Objects Detected (OMIS). Use only after foreground verification completes. Missing replicated object data is restored automatically by the StorageGRID system.
Verify	FVOV	Select object stores on which to perform foreground verification.



Attribute Name	Code	Description
Verification Rate	VPRI	Set the rate at which background verification takes place. See information on configuring the background verification rate.
Reset Corrupt Objects Count	VCCR	Reset the counter for corrupt replicated object data found during background verification. This option can be used to clear the Corrupt Objects Detected (OCOR) alarm condition. For details, see the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID.
Delete Quarantined Objects	OQRT	<p>Delete corrupt objects from the quarantine directory, reset the count of quarantined objects to zero, and clear the Quarantined Objects Detected (OQRT) alarm. This option is used after corrupt objects have been automatically restored by the StorageGRID system.</p> <p>If a Lost Objects alarm is triggered, technical support might want to access the quarantined objects. In some cases, quarantined objects might be useful for data recovery or for debugging the underlying issues that caused the corrupt object copies.</p>

## LDR > Erasure Coding

Attribute Name	Code	Description
Reset Writes Failure Count	RSWF	Reset the counter for write failures of erasure-coded object data to the Storage Node.
Reset Reads Failure Count	RSRF	Reset the counter for read failures of erasure-coded object data from the Storage Node.
Reset Deletes Failure Count	RSDF	Reset the counter for delete failures of erasure-coded object data from the Storage Node.
Reset Corrupt Copies Detected Count	RSCC	Reset the counter for the number of corrupt copies of erasure-coded object data on the Storage Node.
Reset Corrupt Fragments Detected Count	RSCD	Reset the counter for corrupt fragments of erasure-coded object data on the Storage Node.
Reset Missing Fragments Detected Count	RSMD	Reset the counter for missing fragments of erasure-coded object data on the Storage Node. Use only after foreground verification completes.



## LDR > Replication

Attribute Name	Code	Description
Reset Inbound Replication Failure Count	RICR	Reset the counter for inbound replication failures. This can be used to clear the RIRF (Inbound Replication — Failed) alarm.
Reset Outbound Replication Failure Count	ROCR	Reset the counter for outbound replication failures. This can be used to clear the RORF (Outbound Replications — Failed) alarm.
Disable Inbound Replication	DSIR	<p>Select to disable inbound replication as part of a maintenance or testing procedure. Leave unchecked during normal operation.</p> <p>When inbound replication is disabled, objects can be retrieved from the Storage Node for copying to other locations in the StorageGRID system, but objects cannot be copied to this Storage Node from other locations: the LDR service is read-only.</p>
Disable Outbound Replication	DSOR	<p>Select to disable outbound replication (including content requests for HTTP retrievals) as part of a maintenance or testing procedure. Leave unchecked during normal operation.</p> <p>When outbound replication is disabled, objects can be copied to this Storage Node, but objects cannot be retrieved from the Storage Node to be copied to other locations in the StorageGRID system. The LDR service is write-only.</p>

### Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

## Managing full Storage Nodes

As Storage Nodes reach capacity, you must expand the StorageGRID system through the addition of new storage. There are three options available: adding storage volumes, adding storage expansion shelves, and adding Storage Nodes.

### Adding storage volumes

Each Storage Node supports a maximum number of storage volumes. The defined maximum varies by platform. If a Storage Node contains fewer than the maximum number of storage volumes, you can add volumes to increase its capacity. See the instructions for expanding a StorageGRID system.

### Adding storage expansion shelves

Some StorageGRID appliance Storage Nodes, such as the SG6060, can support additional storage shelves. If



you have StorageGRID appliances with expansion capabilities that have not already been expanded to maximum capacity, you can add storage shelves to increase capacity. See the instructions for expanding a StorageGRID system.

## Adding Storage Nodes

You can increase storage capacity by adding Storage Nodes. Careful consideration of currently active ILM rules and capacity requirements must be taken when adding storage. See the instructions for expanding a StorageGRID system.

### Related information

[Expand your grid](#)

# Managing Admin Nodes

Each site in a StorageGRID deployment can have one or more Admin Nodes.

- [What an Admin Node is](#)
- [Using multiple Admin Nodes](#)
- [Identifying the primary Admin Node](#)
- [Selecting a preferred sender](#)
- [Viewing notification status and queues](#)
- [How Admin Nodes show acknowledged alarms \(legacy system\)](#)
- [Configuring audit client access](#)

## What an Admin Node is

Admin Nodes provide management services such as system configuration, monitoring, and logging. Each grid must have one primary Admin Node and might have any number of non-primary Admin Nodes for redundancy.

When you sign in to the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager, you are connecting to an Admin Node. You can connect to any Admin Node, and each Admin Node displays a similar view of the StorageGRID system. However, maintenance procedures must be performed using the primary Admin Node.

Admin Nodes can also be used to load balance S3 and Swift client traffic.

Admin Nodes host the following services:

- AMS service
- CMN service
- NMS service
- Prometheus service
- Load Balancer and High Availability services (to support S3 and Swift client traffic)

Admin Nodes also support the Management Application Program Interface (mgmt-api) to process requests from the Grid Management API and the Tenant Management API.



### **What the AMS service is**

The Audit Management System (AMS) service tracks system activity and events.

### **What the CMN service is**

The Configuration Management Node (CMN) service manages system-wide configurations of connectivity and protocol features needed by all services. In addition, the CMN service is used to run and monitor grid tasks. There is only one CMN service per StorageGRID deployment. The Admin Node that hosts the CMN service is known as the primary Admin Node.

### **What the NMS service is**

The Network Management System (NMS) service powers the monitoring, reporting, and configuration options that are displayed through the Grid Manager, the StorageGRID system's browser-based interface.

### **What the Prometheus service is**

The Prometheus service collects time series metrics from the services on all nodes.

#### **Related information**

[Using the Grid Management API](#)

[Use a tenant account](#)

[Managing load balancing](#)

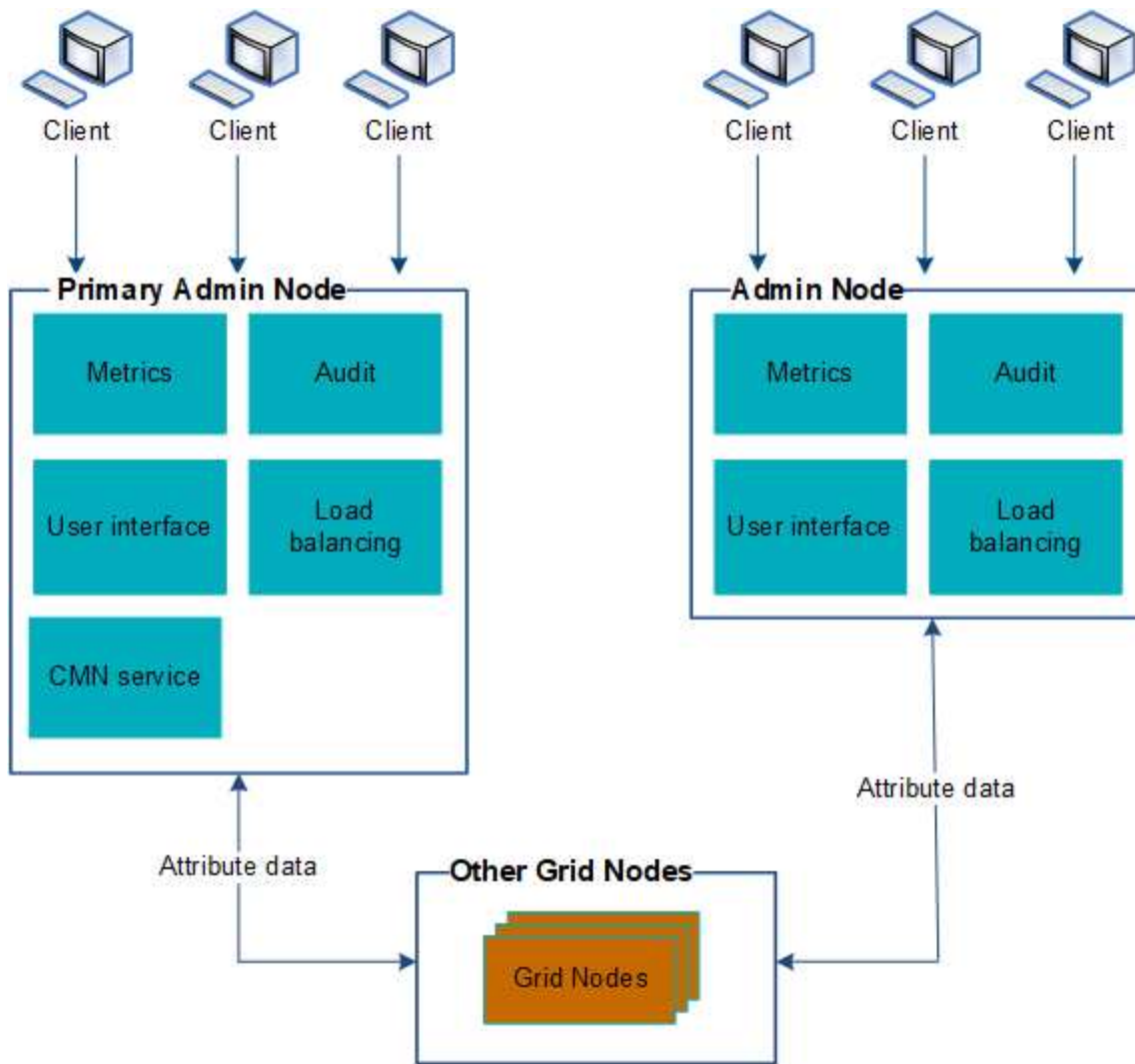
[Managing high availability groups](#)

### **Using multiple Admin Nodes**

A StorageGRID system can include multiple Admin Nodes to enable you to continuously monitor and configure your StorageGRID system even if one Admin Node fails.

If an Admin Node becomes unavailable, attribute processing continues, alerts and alarms (legacy system) are still triggered, and email notifications and AutoSupport messages are still sent. However, having multiple Admin Nodes does not provide failover protection except for notifications and AutoSupport messages. In particular, alarm acknowledgments made from one Admin Node are not copied to other Admin Nodes.





There are two options for continuing to view and configure the StorageGRID system if an Admin Node fails:

- Web clients can reconnect to any other available Admin Node.
- If a system administrator has configured a high availability group of Admin Nodes, web clients can continue to access the Grid Manager or the Tenant Manager using the virtual IP address of the HA group.



When using an HA group, access is interrupted if the Master Admin Node fails. Users must sign in again after the virtual IP address of the HA group fails over to another Admin Node in the group.

Some maintenance tasks can only be performed using the primary Admin Node. If the primary Admin Node fails, it must be recovered before the StorageGRID system is fully functional again.

#### Related information

[Managing high availability groups](#)

### Identifying the primary Admin Node


The primary Admin Node hosts the CMN service. Some maintenance procedures can only be performed using the primary Admin Node.



### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **site > Admin Node**, and then click  to expand the topology tree and show the services hosted on this Admin Node.

The primary Admin Node hosts the CMN service.

3. If this Admin Node does not host the CMN service, check the other Admin Nodes.

## Selecting a preferred sender

If your StorageGRID deployment includes multiple Admin Nodes, you can select which Admin Node should be the preferred sender of notifications. By default, the primary Admin Node is selected, but any Admin Node can be the preferred sender.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

The **Configuration > System Settings > Display Options** page shows which Admin Node is currently selected to be the preferred sender. The primary Admin Node is selected by default.

Under normal system operations, only the preferred sender sends the following notifications:

- AutoSupport messages
- SNMP notifications
- Alert emails
- Alarm emails (legacy system)

However, all other Admin Nodes (standby senders) monitor the preferred sender. If a problem is detected, a standby sender can also send these notifications.

Both the preferred sender and a standby sender might send notifications in these cases:

- If Admin Nodes become “islanded” from each other, both the preferred sender and the standby senders will attempt to send notifications, and multiple copies of notifications might be received.
- After a standby sender detects problems with the preferred sender and starts sending notifications, the preferred sender might regain its ability to send notifications. If this occurs, duplicate notifications might be sent. The standby sender will stop sending notifications when it no longer detects errors on the preferred sender.



When you test alarm notifications and AutoSupport messages, all Admin Nodes send the test email. When you test alert notifications, you must sign in to every Admin Node to verify connectivity.



## Steps

1. Select **Configuration > System Settings > Display Options**.
2. From the Display Options menu, select **Options**.
3. Select the Admin Node you want to set as the preferred sender from the drop-down list.



### Display Options

Updated: 2017-08-30 16:31:10 MDT

Current Sender	ADMIN-DC1-ADM1
Preferred Sender	ADMIN-DC1-ADM1
GUI Inactivity Timeout	900
Notification Suppress All	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Changes

4. Click **Apply Changes**.

The Admin Node is set as the preferred sender of notifications.


## Viewing notification status and queues



The NMS service on Admin Nodes sends notifications to the mail server. You can view the current status of the NMS service and the size of its notifications queue on the Interface Engine page.

To access the Interface Engine page, select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**. Finally, select **site > Admin Node > NMS > Interface Engine**.



**Overview** | Alarms | Reports | Configuration

Main




 **Overview: NMS (170-176) - Interface Engine**  
Updated: 2009-03-09 10:12:17 PDT

NMS Interface Engine Status:	Connected	
Connected Services:	15	

**E-mail Notification Events**

E-mail Notifications Status:	No Errors	
E-mail Notifications Queued:	0	

**Database Connection Pool**

Maximum Supported Capacity:	100	
Remaining Capacity:	95 %	
Active Connections:	5	

Notifications are processed through the email notifications queue and are sent to the mail server one after

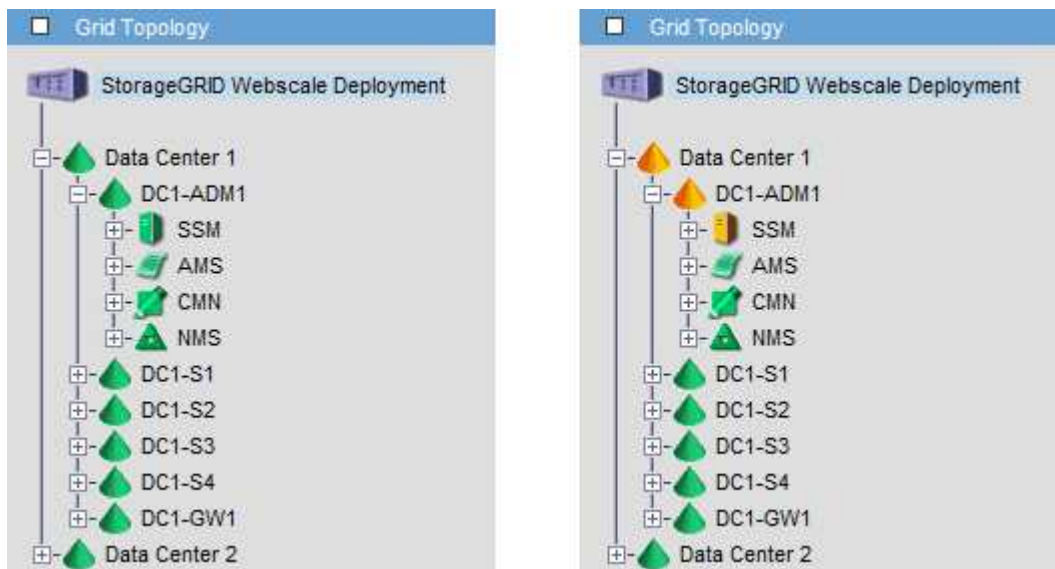


another in the order they are triggered. If there is a problem (for example, a network connection error) and the mail server is unavailable when the attempt is made to send the notification, a best effort attempt to resend the notification to the mail server continues for a period of 60 seconds. If the notification is not sent to the mail server after 60 seconds, the notification is dropped from the notifications queue and an attempt to send the next notification in the queue is made. Because notifications can be dropped from the notifications queue without being sent, it is possible that an alarm can be triggered without a notification being sent. In the event that a notification is dropped from the queue without being sent, the MINS (E-mail Notification Status) Minor alarm is triggered.

## How Admin Nodes show acknowledged alarms (legacy system)

When you acknowledge an alarm on one Admin Node, the acknowledged alarm is not copied to any other Admin Node. Because acknowledgments are not copied to other Admin Nodes, the Grid Topology tree might not look the same for each Admin Node.

This difference can be useful when connecting web clients. Web clients can have different views of the StorageGRID system based on the administrator needs.



Note that notifications are sent from the Admin Node where the acknowledgment occurs.

## Configuring audit client access

The Admin Node, through the Audit Management System (AMS) service, logs all audited system events to a log file available through the audit share, which is added to each Admin Node at installation. For easy access to audit logs, you can configure client access to audit shares for both CIFS and NFS.

The StorageGRID system uses positive acknowledgment to prevent loss of audit messages before they are written to the log file. A message remains queued at a service until the AMS service or an intermediate audit relay service has acknowledged control of it.

For more information, see the instructions for understanding audit messages.



If you have the option to use CIFS or NFS, choose NFS.





Audit export through CIFS/Samba has been deprecated and will be removed in a future StorageGRID release.

#### Related information

[What an Admin Node is](#)

[Review audit logs](#)

[Upgrade software](#)

#### Configuring audit clients for CIFS

The procedure used to configure an audit client depends on the authentication method: Windows Workgroup or Windows Active Directory (AD). When added, the audit share is automatically enabled as a read-only share.



Audit export through CIFS/Samba has been deprecated and will be removed in a future StorageGRID release.

#### Related information

[Upgrade software](#)

#### Configuring audit clients for Workgroup

Perform this procedure for each Admin Node in a StorageGRID deployment from which you want to retrieve audit messages.

#### What you'll need

- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file with the root/admin account password (available in the SAID package).
- You must have the `Configuration.txt` file (available in the SAID package).

#### About this task

Audit export through CIFS/Samba has been deprecated and will be removed in a future StorageGRID release.

#### Steps

1. Log in to the primary Admin Node:

- a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
- b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
- c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
- d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.

2. Confirm that all services have a state of Running or Verified: `storagegrid-status`

If all services are not Running or Verified, resolve issues before continuing.



3. Return to the command line, press **Ctrl+C**.
4. Start the CIFS configuration utility: `config_cifs.rb`

Shares	Authentication	Config
add-audit-share	set-authentication	validate-config
enable-disable-share	set-netbios-name	help
add-user-to-share	join-domain	exit
remove-user-from-share	add-password-server	
modify-group	remove-password-server	
	add-wins-server	
	remove-wins-server	

5. Set the authentication for the Windows Workgroup:

If authentication has already been set, an advisory message appears. If authentication has already been set, go to the next step.

- a. Enter: `set-authentication`
- b. When prompted for Windows Workgroup or Active Directory installation, enter: `workgroup`
- c. When prompted, enter a name of the Workgroup: `workgroup_name`
- d. When prompted, create a meaningful NetBIOS name: `netbios_name`

or

Press **Enter** to use the Admin Node's hostname as the NetBIOS name.

The script restarts the Samba server and changes are applied. This should take less than one minute. After setting authentication, add an audit client.

- e. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

6. Add an audit client:

- a. Enter: `add-audit-share`



The share is automatically added as read-only.

- b. When prompted, add a user or group: `user`
- c. When prompted, enter the audit user name: `audit_user_name`
- d. When prompted, enter a password for the audit user: `password`
- e. When prompted, re-enter the same password to confirm it: `password`



- f. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.



There is no need to enter a directory. The audit directory name is predefined.

7. If more than one user or group is permitted to access the audit share, add the additional users:

- a. Enter: `add-user-to-share`

A numbered list of enabled shares is displayed.

- b. When prompted, enter the number of the audit-export share: *share\_number*

- c. When prompted, add a user or group: `user`

or `group`

- d. When prompted, enter the name of the audit user or group: *audit\_user* or *audit\_group*

- e. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

- f. Repeat these substeps for each additional user or group that has access to the audit share.

8. Optionally, verify your configuration: `validate-config`

The services are checked and displayed. You can safely ignore the following messages:

```
Can't find include file /etc/samba/includes/cifs-interfaces.inc
Can't find include file /etc/samba/includes/cifs-filesystem.inc
Can't find include file /etc/samba/includes/cifs-custom-config.inc
Can't find include file /etc/samba/includes/cifs-shares.inc
rlimit_max: increasing rlimit_max (1024) to minimum Windows limit
(16384)
```

- a. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The audit client configuration is displayed.

- b. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

9. Close the CIFS configuration utility: `exit`

10. Start the Samba service: `service smbd start`

11. If the StorageGRID deployment is a single site, go to the next step.

or

Optionally, if the StorageGRID deployment includes Admin Nodes at other sites, enable these audit share



as required:

- a. Remotely log in to a site's Admin Node:
  - i. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@grid_node_IP`
  - ii. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - iii. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - iv. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
- b. Repeat the steps to configure the audit share for each additional Admin Node.
- c. Close the remote secure shell login to the remote Admin Node: `exit`

12. Log out of the command shell: `exit`

## Related information

[Upgrade software](#)

### Configuring audit clients for Active Directory

Perform this procedure for each Admin Node in a StorageGRID deployment from which you want to retrieve audit messages.

#### What you'll need

- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file with the root/admin account password (available in the SAID package).
- You must have the CIFS Active Directory username and password.
- You must have the `Configuration.txt` file (available in the SAID package).



Audit export through CIFS/Samba has been deprecated and will be removed in a future StorageGRID release.

#### Steps

1. Log in to the primary Admin Node:
  - a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
  - b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.

2. Confirm that all services have a state of Running or Verified: `storagegrid-status`

If all services are not Running or Verified, resolve issues before continuing.

3. Return to the command line, press **Ctrl+C**.
4. Start the CIFS configuration utility: `config_cifs.rb`



Shares	Authentication	Config
add-audit-share	set-authentication	validate-config
enable-disable-share	set-netbios-name	help
add-user-to-share	join-domain	exit
remove-user-from-share	add-password-server	
modify-group	remove-password-server	
	add-wins-server	
	remove-wins-server	

##### 5. Set the authentication for Active Directory: `set-authentication`

In most deployments, you must set the authentication before adding the audit client. If authentication has already been set, an advisory message appears. If authentication has already been set, go to the next step.

- When prompted for Workgroup or Active Directory installation: `ad`
- When prompted, enter the name of the AD domain (short domain name).
- When prompted, enter the domain controller's IP address or DNS hostname.
- When prompted, enter the full domain realm name.

Use uppercase letters.

- When prompted to enable winbind support, type `y`.

Winbind is used to resolve user and group information from AD servers.

- When prompted, enter the NetBIOS name.
- When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

##### 6. Join the domain:

- If not already started, start the CIFS configuration utility: `config_cifs.rb`
- Join the domain: `join-domain`
- You are prompted to test if the Admin Node is currently a valid member of the domain. If this Admin Node has not previously joined the domain, enter: `no`
- When prompted, provide the Administrator's username: `administrator_username`

where `administrator_username` is the CIFS Active Directory username, not the StorageGRID username.

- When prompted, provide the Administrator's password: `administrator_password`

where `administrator_password` is the CIFS Active Directory password, not the StorageGRID password.



password.

- f. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

7. Verify that you have correctly joined the domain:

- a. Join the domain: `join-domain`

- b. When prompted to test if the server is currently a valid member of the domain, enter: `y`

If you receive the message “Join is OK,” you have successfully joined the domain. If you do not get this response, try setting authentication and joining the domain again.

- c. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

8. Add an audit client: `add-audit-share`

- a. When prompted to add a user or group, enter: `user`

- b. When prompted to enter the audit user name, enter the audit user name.

- c. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

9. If more than one user or group is permitted to access the audit share, add additional users: `add-user-to-share`

A numbered list of enabled shares is displayed.

- a. Enter the number of the audit-export share.

- b. When prompted to add a user or group, enter: `group`

You are prompted for the audit group name.

- c. When prompted for the audit group name, enter the name of the audit user group.

- d. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

- e. Repeat this step for each additional user or group that has access to the audit share.

10. Optionally, verify your configuration: `validate-config`

The services are checked and displayed. You can safely ignore the following messages:

- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-interfaces.inc`
- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-filesystem.inc`
- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-interfaces.inc`
- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-custom-config.inc`



- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-shares.inc`
- `rlimit_max`: increasing `rlimit_max` (1024) to minimum Windows limit (16384)



Do not combine the setting 'security=ads' with the 'password server' parameter. (by default Samba will discover the correct DC to contact automatically).

- When prompted, press **Enter** to display the audit client configuration.
- When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.

- Close the CIFS configuration utility: `exit`
- If the StorageGRID deployment is a single site, go to the next step.

or

Optionally, if the StorageGRID deployment includes Admin Nodes at other sites, enable these audit shares as required:

- Remotely log in to a site's Admin Node:
  - Enter the following command: `ssh admin@grid_node_IP`
  - Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
- Repeat these steps to configure the audit shares for each Admin Node.
- Close the remote secure shell login to the Admin Node: `exit`

- Log out of the command shell: `exit`

## Related information

[Upgrade software](#)

### Adding a user or group to a CIFS audit share

You can add a user or group to a CIFS audit share that is integrated with AD authentication.

#### What you'll need

- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file with the root/admin account password (available in the SAID package).
- You must have the `Configuration.txt` file (available in the SAID package).

#### About this task

The following procedure is for an audit share integrated with AD authentication.



Audit export through CIFS/Samba has been deprecated and will be removed in a future StorageGRID release.



## Steps

1. Log in to the primary Admin Node:
  - a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
  - b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.

2. Confirm that all services have a state of Running or Verified. Enter: `storagegrid-status`

If all services are not Running or Verified, resolve issues before continuing.

3. Return to the command line, press **Ctrl+C**.
4. Start the CIFS configuration utility: `config_cifs.rb`

-----			
Shares	Authentication	Config	
-----			
add-audit-share	set-authentication	validate-config	
enable-disable-share	set-netbios-name	help	
add-user-to-share	join-domain	exit	
remove-user-from-share	add-password-server		
modify-group	remove-password-server		
	add-wins-server		
	remove-wins-server		
-----			

5. Start adding a user or group: `add-user-to-share`

A numbered list of audit shares that have been configured is displayed.
6. When prompted, enter the number for the audit share (audit-export): `audit_share_number`

You are asked if you would like to give a user or a group access to this audit share.
7. When prompted, add a user or group: `user` or `group`
8. When prompted for the user or group name for this AD audit share, enter the name.

The user or group is added as read-only for the audit share both in the server's operating system and in the CIFS service. The Samba configuration is reloaded to enable the user or group to access the audit client share.

9. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The CIFS configuration utility is displayed.



10. Repeat these steps for each user or group that has access to the audit share.

11. Optionally, verify your configuration: `validate-config`

The services are checked and displayed. You can safely ignore the following messages:

- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-interfaces.inc`
- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-filesystem.inc`
- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-custom-config.inc`
- Can't find include file `/etc/samba/includes/cifs-shares.inc`
  - a. When prompted, press **Enter** to display the audit client configuration.
  - b. When prompted, press **Enter**.

12. Close the CIFS configuration utility: `exit`

13. Determine if you need to enable additional audit shares, as follows:

- If the StorageGRID deployment is a single site, go to the next step.
- If the StorageGRID deployment includes Admin Nodes at other sites, enable these audit shares as required:
  - a. Remotely log in to a site's Admin Node:
    - i. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@grid_node_IP`
    - ii. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
    - iii. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
    - iv. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - b. Repeat these steps to configure the audit shares for each Admin Node.
  - c. Close the remote secure shell login to the remote Admin Node: `exit`

14. Log out of the command shell: `exit`

#### Removing a user or group from a CIFS audit share

You cannot remove the last user or group permitted to access the audit share.

#### What you'll need

- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file with the root account passwords (available in the SAID package).
- You must have the `Configuration.txt` file (available in the SAID package).

#### About this task

Audit export through CIFS/Samba has been deprecated and will be removed in a future StorageGRID release.

#### Steps

1. Log in to the primary Admin Node:
  - a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
  - b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`



d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.

2. Start the CIFS configuration utility: `config_cifs.rb`

-----			
Shares	Authentication	Config	
-----			
add-audit-share	set-authentication	validate-config	
enable-disable-share	set-netbios-name	help	
add-user-to-share	join-domain	exit	
remove-user-from-share	add-password-server		
modify-group	remove-password-server		
	add-wins-server		
	remove-wins-server		
-----			

3. Start removing a user or group: `remove-user-from-share`

A numbered list of available audit shares for the Admin Node is displayed. The audit share is labeled `audit-export`.

4. Enter the number of the audit share: `audit_share_number`

5. When prompted to remove a user or a group: `user` or `group`

A numbered list of users or groups for the audit share is displayed.

6. Enter the number corresponding to the user or group you want to remove: `number`

The audit share is updated, and the user or group is no longer permitted access to the audit share. For example:

```
Enabled shares
 1. audit-export
Select the share to change: 1
Remove user or group? [User/group]: User
Valid users for this share
 1. audituser
 2. newaudituser
Select the user to remove: 1

Removed user "audituser" from share "audit-export".

Press return to continue.
```



7. Close the CIFS configuration utility: `exit`
8. If the StorageGRID deployment includes Admin Nodes at other sites, disable the audit share at each site as required.
9. Log out of each command shell when configuration is complete: `exit`

## Related information

[Upgrade software](#)

### Changing a CIFS audit share user or group name

You can change the name of a user or a group for a CIFS audit share by adding a new user or group and then deleting the old one.

## About this task

Audit export through CIFS/Samba has been deprecated and will be removed in a future StorageGRID release.

## Steps

1. Add a new user or group with the updated name to the audit share.
2. Delete the old user or group name.

## Related information

[Upgrade software](#)

[Adding a user or group to a CIFS audit share](#)

[Removing a user or group from a CIFS audit share](#)

### Verifying CIFS audit integration

The audit share is read-only. Log files are intended to be read by computer applications and verification does not include opening a file. It is considered sufficient verification that the audit log files appear in a Windows Explorer window. Following connection verification, close all windows.

### Configuring the audit client for NFS

The audit share is automatically enabled as a read-only share.

## What you'll need

- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file with the root/admin password (available in the SAID package).
- You must have the `Configuration.txt` file (available in the SAID package).
- The audit client must be using NFS Version 3 (NFSv3).

## About this task

Perform this procedure for each Admin Node in a StorageGRID deployment from which you want to retrieve audit messages.

## Steps



1. Log in to the primary Admin Node:
  - a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
  - b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.

2. Confirm that all services have a state of Running or Verified. Enter: `storagegrid-status`

If any services are not listed as Running or Verified, resolve issues before continuing.

3. Return to the command line. Press **Ctrl+C**.
4. Start the NFS configuration utility. Enter: `config_nfs.rb`

```

-----
| Shares                | Clients                | Config                |
-----
| add-audit-share       | add-ip-to-share       | validate-config      |
| enable-disable-share  | remove-ip-from-share  | refresh-config       |
|                       |                       | help                 |
|                       |                       | exit                 |
-----

```

5. Add the audit client: `add-audit-share`
  - a. When prompted, enter the audit client's IP address or IP address range for the audit share:  
`client_IP_address`
  - b. When prompted, press **Enter**.
6. If more than one audit client is permitted to access the audit share, add the IP address of the additional user: `add-ip-to-share`
  - a. Enter the number of the audit share: `audit_share_number`
  - b. When prompted, enter the audit client's IP address or IP address range for the audit share:  
`client_IP_address`
  - c. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The NFS configuration utility is displayed.

  - d. Repeat these substeps for each additional audit client that has access to the audit share.
7. Optionally, verify your configuration.
  - a. Enter the following: `validate-config`

The services are checked and displayed.

  - b. When prompted, press **Enter**.



The NFS configuration utility is displayed.

c. Close the NFS configuration utility: `exit`

8. Determine if you must enable audit shares at other sites.

- If the StorageGRID deployment is a single site, go to the next step.
- If the StorageGRID deployment includes Admin Nodes at other sites, enable these audit shares as required:
  - a. Remotely log in to the site's Admin Node:
    - i. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@grid_node_IP`
    - ii. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
    - iii. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
    - iv. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - b. Repeat these steps to configure the audit shares for each additional Admin Node.
  - c. Close the remote secure shell login to the remote Admin Node. Enter: `exit`

9. Log out of the command shell: `exit`

NFS audit clients are granted access to an audit share based on their IP address. Grant access to the audit share to a new NFS audit client by adding its IP address to the share, or remove an existing audit client by removing its IP address.

#### **Adding an NFS audit client to an audit share**

NFS audit clients are granted access to an audit share based on their IP address. Grant access to the audit share to a new NFS audit client by adding its IP address to the audit share.

#### **What you'll need**

- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file with the root/admin account password (available in the SAID package).
- You must have the `Configuration.txt` file (available in the SAID package).
- The audit client must be using NFS Version 3 (NFSv3).

#### **Steps**

1. Log in to the primary Admin Node:

- a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
- b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
- c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
- d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.

2. Start the NFS configuration utility: `config_nfs.rb`



Shares	Clients	Config
add-audit-share	add-ip-to-share	validate-config
enable-disable-share	remove-ip-from-share	refresh-config
		help
		exit

3. Enter: `add-ip-to-share`

A list of NFS audit shares enabled on the Admin Node is displayed. The audit share is listed as:  
`/var/local/audit/export`

4. Enter the number of the audit share: `audit_share_number`

5. When prompted, enter the audit client's IP address or IP address range for the audit share:  
`client_IP_address`

The audit client is added to the audit share.

6. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The NFS configuration utility is displayed.

7. Repeat the steps for each audit client that should be added to the audit share.

8. Optionally, verify your configuration: `validate-config`

The services are checked and displayed.

a. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The NFS configuration utility is displayed.

9. Close the NFS configuration utility: `exit`

10. If the StorageGRID deployment is a single site, go to the next step.

Otherwise, if the StorageGRID deployment includes Admin Nodes at other sites, optionally enable these audit shares as required:

a. Remotely log in to a site's Admin Node:

- i. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@grid_node_IP`
- ii. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
- iii. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
- iv. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

b. Repeat these steps to configure the audit shares for each Admin Node.

c. Close the remote secure shell login to the remote Admin Node: `exit`



11. Log out of the command shell: `exit`

### Verifying NFS audit integration

After you configure an audit share and add an NFS audit client, you can mount the audit client share and verify that the files are available from the audit share.

#### Steps

1. Verify connectivity (or variant for the client system) using the client-side IP address of the Admin Node hosting the AMS service. Enter: `ping IP_address`

Verify that the server responds, indicating connectivity.

2. Mount the audit read-only share using a command appropriate to the client operating system. A sample Linux command is (enter on one line):

```
mount -t nfs -o hard,intr Admin_Node_IP_address:/var/local/audit/export  
myAudit
```

Use the IP address of the Admin Node hosting the AMS service and the predefined share name for the audit system. The mount point can be any name selected by the client (for example, *myAudit* in the previous command).

3. Verify that the files are available from the audit share. Enter: `ls myAudit /*`

where *myAudit* is the mount point of the audit share. There should be at least one log file listed.

### Removing an NFS audit client from the audit share

NFS audit clients are granted access to an audit share based on their IP address. You can remove an existing audit client by removing its IP address.

#### What you'll need

- You must have the `Passwords.txt` file with the root/admin account password (available in the SAID package).
- You must have the `Configuration.txt` file (available in the SAID package).

#### About this task

You cannot remove the last IP address permitted to access the audit share.

#### Steps

1. Log in to the primary Admin Node:
  - a. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@primary_Admin_Node_IP`
  - b. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.
  - c. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`
  - d. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

When you are logged in as root, the prompt changes from `$` to `#`.



2. Start the NFS configuration utility: `config_nfs.rb`

-----			
Shares	Clients	Config	
-----			
add-audit-share	add-ip-to-share	validate-config	
enable-disable-share	remove-ip-from-share	refresh-config	
		help	
		exit	
-----			

3. Remove the IP address from the audit share: `remove-ip-from-share`

A numbered list of audit shares configured on the server is displayed. The audit share is listed as:  
`/var/local/audit/export`

4. Enter the number corresponding to the audit share: `audit_share_number`

A numbered list of IP addresses permitted to access the audit share is displayed.

5. Enter the number corresponding to the IP address you want to remove.

The audit share is updated, and access is no longer permitted from any audit client with this IP address.

6. When prompted, press **Enter**.

The NFS configuration utility is displayed.

7. Close the NFS configuration utility: `exit`

8. If your StorageGRID deployment is a multiple data center site deployment with additional Admin Nodes at the other sites, disable these audit shares as required:

a. Remotely log in to each site's Admin Node:

i. Enter the following command: `ssh admin@grid_node_IP`

ii. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

iii. Enter the following command to switch to root: `su -`

iv. Enter the password listed in the `Passwords.txt` file.

b. Repeat these steps to configure the audit shares for each additional Admin Node.

c. Close the remote secure shell login to the remote Admin Node: `exit`

9. Log out of the command shell: `exit`

### Changing the IP address of an NFS audit client

1. Add a new IP address to an existing NFS audit share.

2. Remove the original IP address.

### Related information



# Managing Archive Nodes

Optionally, each of your StorageGRID system’s data center sites can be deployed with an Archive Node, which allows you to connect to a targeted external archival storage system, such as Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM).

After configuring connections to the external target, you can configure the Archive Node to optimize TSM performance, take an Archive Node offline when a TSM server is nearing capacity or unavailable, and configure replication and retrieve settings. You can also set Custom alarms for the Archive Node.

- [What an Archive Node is](#)
- [Configuring Archive Node connections to archival storage](#)
- [Setting Custom alarms for the Archive Node](#)
- [Integrating Tivoli Storage Manager](#)

## What an Archive Node is

The Archive Node provides an interface through which you can target an external archival storage system for the long term storage of object data. The Archive Node also monitors this connection and the transfer of object data between the StorageGRID system and the targeted external archival storage system.

Grid Topology

StorageGRID Webscale Deployment

Data Center 1

DC1-ADM1-98-160

DC1-G1-98-161

DC1-S1-98-162

DC1-S2-98-163

DC1-S3-98-164

DC1-ARC1-98-165

SSM

ARC

Replication

Store

Retrieve

Target

Events

Resources

Data Center 2

Data Center 3

OverviewAlarmsReportsConfiguration

Main

Overview: ARC (DC1-ARC1-98-165) - ARC

Updated: 2015-08-30 10:29:18 PDT

ARC State:Online

ARC Status:No Errors

Tivoli Storage Manager State:Online

Tivoli Storage Manager Status:No Errors

Store State:Online

Store Status:No Errors

Retrieve State:Online

Retrieve Status:No Errors

Inbound Replication Status:No Errors

Outbound Replication Status:No Errors

Node Information

Device Type:Archive Node

Version:10.2.0

Build:20150928.2133.a27b3ab

Node ID:19002524

Site ID:10

Object data that cannot be deleted, but is not regularly accessed, can at any time be moved off of a Storage Node’s spinning disks and onto external archival storage such as the cloud or tape. This archiving of object data is accomplished through the configuration of a data center site’s Archive Node and then the configuration of ILM rules where this Archive Node is selected as the "target" for content placement instructions. The Archive



Node does not manage archived object data itself; this is achieved by the external archive device.



Object metadata is not archived, but remains on Storage Nodes.

### What the ARC service is

The Archive Node's Archive (ARC) service provides the management interface you can use to configure connections to external archival storage, such as tape through TSM middleware.

It is the ARC service that interacts with an external archival storage system, sending object data for near-line storage and performing retrievals when a client application requests an archived object. When a client application requests an archived object, a Storage Node requests the object data from the ARC service. The ARC service makes a request to the external archival storage system, which retrieves the requested object data and sends it to the ARC service. The ARC service verifies the object data and forwards it to the Storage Node, which in turn returns the object to the requesting client application.

Requests for object data archived to tape through TSM middleware are managed for efficiency of retrievals. Requests can be ordered so that objects stored in sequential order on tape are requested in that same sequential order. Requests are then queued for submission to the storage device. Depending upon the archival device, multiple requests for objects on different volumes can be processed simultaneously.

## Configuring Archive Node connections to archival storage

When you configure an Archive Node to connect with an external archive, you must select the target type.

The StorageGRID system supports the archiving of object data to the cloud through an S3 interface or to tape through Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) middleware.



Once the type of archival target is configured for an Archive Node, the target type cannot be changed.

- [Archiving to the cloud through the S3 API](#)
- [Archiving to tape through TSM middleware](#)
- [Configuring Archive Node retrieve settings](#)
- [Configuring Archive Node replication](#)

### Archiving to the cloud through the S3 API

You can configure an Archive Node to connect directly to Amazon Web Services (AWS) or to any other system that can interface to the StorageGRID system through the S3 API.



Moving objects from an Archive Node to an external archival storage system through the S3 API has been replaced by ILM Cloud Storage Pools, which offer more functionality. The **Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)** option is still supported, but you might prefer to implement Cloud Storage Pools instead.

If you are currently using an Archive Node with the **Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)** option, consider migrating your objects to a Cloud Storage Pool. See the instructions for managing objects with



information lifecycle management.

## Related information

[Manage objects with ILM](#)

### Configuring connection settings for the S3 API

If you are connecting to an Archive Node using the S3 interface, you must configure the connection settings for the S3 API. Until these settings are configured, the ARC service remains in a Major alarm state as it is unable to communicate with the external archival storage system.



Moving objects from an Archive Node to an external archival storage system through the S3 API has been replaced by ILM Cloud Storage Pools, which offer more functionality. The **Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)** option is still supported, but you might prefer to implement Cloud Storage Pools instead.

If you are currently using an Archive Node with the **Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)** option, consider migrating your objects to a Cloud Storage Pool. See the instructions for managing objects with information lifecycle management.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must have created a bucket on the target archival storage system:
  - The bucket must be dedicated to a single Archive Node. It cannot be used by other Archive Nodes or other applications.
  - The bucket must have the appropriate region selected for your location.
  - The bucket should be configured with versioning suspended.
- Object Segmentation must be enabled and the Maximum Segment Size must be less than or equal to 4.5 GiB (4,831,838,208 bytes). S3 API requests that exceed this value will fail if S3 is used as the external archival storage system.

### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Target**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.



Overview


Alarms

Reports

Configuration

Main

Alarms



Configuration: ARC (98-127) - Target

Updated: 2015-09-24 15:48:22 PDT

---

Target Type:

Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)

Cloud Tiering (S3) Account

Bucket Name:

name

Region:

Virginia or Pacific Northwest (us-east-1)

Endpoint:

https://10.10.10.123:8082

☐ Use AWS

Endpoint Authentication:

☐

Access Key:

ABCD123EFG45AB

Secret Access Key:

.....

Storage Class:

Standard (Default)

Apply Changes

- Select **Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)** from the Target Type drop-down list.



Configuration settings are unavailable until you select a Target Type.

- Configure the cloud tiering (S3) account through which the Archive Node will connect to the target external S3 capable archival storage system.

Most of the fields on this page are self-explanatory. The following describes fields for which you might need guidance.

- **Region:** Only available if **Use AWS** is selected. The region you select must match the bucket's region.
- **Endpoint** and **Use AWS:** For Amazon Web Services (AWS), select **Use AWS**. **Endpoint** is then automatically populated with an endpoint URL based on the Bucket Name and Region attributes. For example:

```
https://bucket.region.amazonaws.com
```

For a non-AWS target, enter the URL of the system hosting the bucket, including the port number. For example:

```
https://system.com:1080
```

- **End Point Authentication:** Enabled by default. If the network to the external archival storage system is trusted, you can unselect the check box to disable endpoint SSL certificate and hostname verification for the targeted external archival storage system. If another instance of a StorageGRID system is the target archival storage device and the system is configured with publicly signed certificates, you can keep the check box selected.



- **Storage Class:** Select **Standard (Default)** for regular storage. Select **Reduced Redundancy** only for objects that can be easily recreated. **Reduced Redundancy** provides lower cost storage with less reliability. If the targeted archival storage system is another instance of the StorageGRID system, **Storage Class** controls how many interim copies of the object are made at ingest on the target system, if dual commit is used when objects are ingested there.

6. Click **Apply Changes**.

The specified configuration settings are validated and applied to your StorageGRID system. Once configured, the target cannot be changed.

## Related information

[Manage objects with ILM](#)

## Modifying connection settings for S3 API

After the Archive Node is configured to connect to an external archival storage system through the S3 API, you can modify some settings should the connection change.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

If you change the Cloud Tiering (S3) account, you must ensure that the user access credentials have read/write access to the bucket, including all objects that were previously ingested by the Archive Node to the bucket.

### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Target**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.



Overview

Alarms

Reports

Configuration

Main

Alarms




Configuration: ARC (98-127) - Target

Updated: 2015-09-24 15:48:22 PDT

Target Type: Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)

### Cloud Tiering (S3) Account

Bucket Name:	name		
Region:	Virginia or Pacific Northwest (us-east-1)		
Endpoint:	https://10.10.10.123:8082	<input type="checkbox"/>	Use AWS
Endpoint Authentication:	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Access Key:	ABCD123EFG45AB		
Secret Access Key:	••••••		
Storage Class:	Standard (Default)		

Apply Changes 

4. Modify account information, as necessary.

If you change the storage class, new object data is stored with the new storage class. Existing object continue to be stored under the storage class set when ingested.



Bucket Name, Region, and Endpoint, use AWS values and cannot be changed.

5. Click **Apply Changes**.

### Modifying the Cloud Tiering Service state

You can control the Archive Node's ability read and write to the targeted external archival storage system that connects through the S3 API by changing the state of the Cloud Tiering Service.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- The Archive Node must be configured.

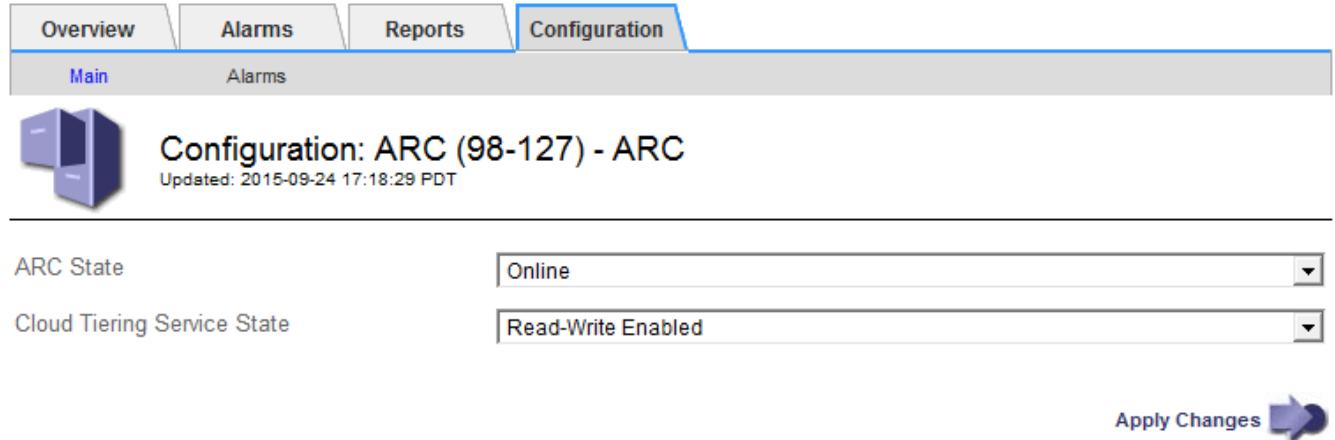
### About this task

You can effectively take the Archive Node offline by changing the Cloud Tiering Service State to **Read-Write Disabled**.

### Steps




1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.




Overview Alarms Reports Configuration

Main Alarms

 Configuration: ARC (98-127) - ARC  
Updated: 2015-09-24 17:18:29 PDT

ARC State Online

Cloud Tiering Service State Read-Write Enabled

Apply Changes 

4. Select a **Cloud Tiering Service State**.
5. Click **Apply Changes**.

#### Resetting the Store Failure Count for S3 API connection

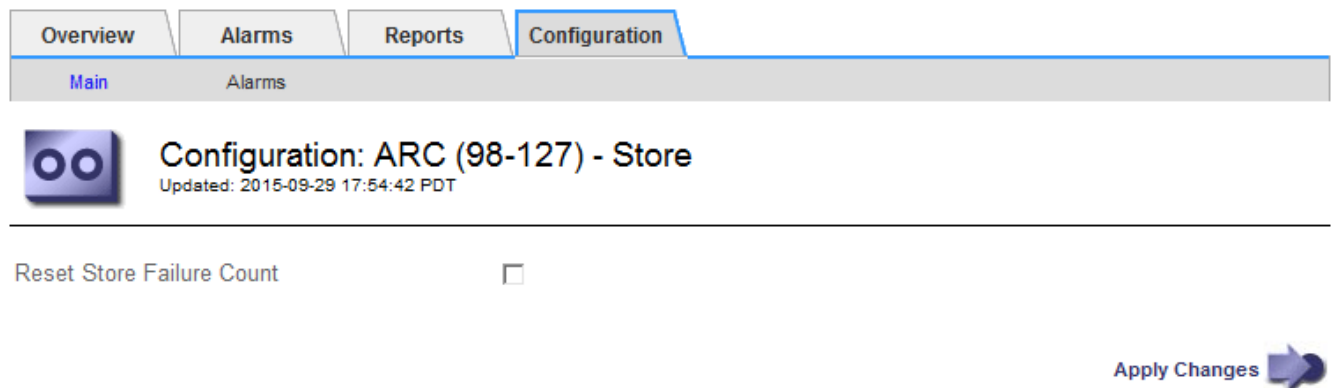
If your Archive Node connects to an archival storage system through the S3 API, you can reset the Store Failure Count, which can be used to clear the ARVF (Store Failures) alarm.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.


#### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Store**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.




Overview Alarms Reports Configuration

Main Alarms

 Configuration: ARC (98-127) - Store  
Updated: 2015-09-29 17:54:42 PDT

Reset Store Failure Count ☐

Apply Changes 

4. Select **Reset Store Failure Count**.
5. Click **Apply Changes**.



The Store Failures attribute resets to zero.

### Migrating objects from Cloud Tiering - S3 to a Cloud Storage Pool

If you are currently using the **Cloud Tiering - Simple Storage Service (S3)** feature to tier object data to an S3 bucket, consider migrating your objects to a Cloud Storage Pool instead. Cloud Storage Pools provide a scalable approach that takes advantage of all of the Storage Nodes in your StorageGRID system.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You have already stored objects in the S3 bucket configured for Cloud Tiering.



Before migrating object data, contact your NetApp account representative to understand and manage any associated costs.

#### About this task

From an ILM perspective, a Cloud Storage Pool is similar to a storage pool. However, while storage pools consist of Storage Nodes or Archive Nodes within the StorageGRID system, a Cloud Storage Pool consists of an external S3 bucket.

Before migrating objects from Cloud Tiering - S3 to a Cloud Storage Pool, you must first create an S3 bucket and then create the Cloud Storage Pool in StorageGRID. Then, you can create a new ILM policy and replace the ILM rule used to store objects in the Cloud Tiering bucket with a cloned ILM rule that stores the same objects in the Cloud Storage Pool.



When objects are stored in a Cloud Storage Pool, copies of those objects cannot also be stored within StorageGRID. If the ILM rule you are currently using for Cloud Tiering is configured to store objects in multiple locations at the same time, consider whether you still want to perform this optional migration because you will lose that functionality. If you continue with this migration, you must create new rules instead of cloning the existing ones.

#### Steps

1. Create a Cloud Storage Pool.

Use a new S3 bucket for the Cloud Storage Pool to ensure it contains only the data managed by the Cloud Storage Pool.

2. Locate any ILM rules in the active ILM policy that cause objects to be stored in the Cloud Tiering bucket.
3. Clone each of these rules.
4. In the cloned rules, change the placement location to the new Cloud Storage Pool.
5. Save the cloned rules.
6. Create a new policy that uses the new rules.
7. Simulate and activate the new policy.

When the new policy is activated and ILM evaluation occurs, the objects are moved from the S3 bucket configured for Cloud Tiering to the S3 bucket configured for the Cloud Storage Pool. The usable space on



the grid is not affected. After the objects are moved to the Cloud Storage Pool, they are removed from the Cloud Tiering bucket.

## Related information

[Manage objects with ILM](#)

## Archiving to tape through TSM middleware

You can configure an Archive Node to target a Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) server that provides a logical interface for storing and retrieving object data to random or sequential access storage devices, including tape libraries.

The Archive Node's ARC service acts as a client to the TSM server, using Tivoli Storage Manager as middleware for communicating with the archival storage system.

## TSM management classes

Management classes defined by the TSM middleware outline how the TSM's backup and archive operations function, and can be used to specify rules for content that are applied by the TSM server. Such rules operate independently of the StorageGRID system's ILM policy, and must be consistent with the StorageGRID system's requirement that objects are stored permanently and are always available for retrieval by the Archive Node. After object data is sent to a TSM server by the Archive Node, the TSM lifecycle and retention rules are applied while the object data is stored to tape managed by the TSM server.

The TSM management class is used by the TSM server to apply rules for data location or retention after objects are sent to the TSM server by the Archive Node. For example, objects identified as database backups (temporary content that can be overwritten with newer data) could be treated differently than application data (fixed content that must be retained indefinitely).

## Configuring connections to TSM middleware

Before the Archive Node can communicate with Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) middleware, you must configure a number of settings.

## What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

## About this task

Until these settings are configured, the ARC service remains in a Major alarm state as it is unable to communicate with the Tivoli Storage Manager.

## Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Target**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.



Overview


Alarms

Reports

Configuration

Main

Alarms



Configuration: ARC (DC1-ARC1-98-165) - Target

Updated: 2015-09-28 09:56:36 PDT

---

Target Type:

Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM)

Tivoli Storage Manager State:

Online

Target (TSM) Account

---

Server IP or Hostname:

10.10.10.123

Server Port:

1500

Node Name:

ARC-USER

User Name:

arc-user

Password:

••••••

Management Class:

sg-mgmtclass

Number of Sessions:

2


Maximum Retrieve Sessions:

1

Maximum Store Sessions:

1

Apply Changes



4. From the **Target Type** drop-down list, select **Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM)**.
5. For the **Tivoli Storage Manager State**, select **Offline** to prevent retrievals from the TSM middleware server.

By default, the Tivoli Storage Manager State is set to Online, which means that the Archive Node is able to retrieve object data from the TSM middleware server.

6. Complete the following information:
  - **Server IP or Hostname:** Specify the IP address or fully qualified domain name of the TSM middleware server used by the ARC service. The default IP address is 127.0.0.1.
  - **Server Port:** Specify the port number on the TSM middleware server that the ARC service will connect to. The default is 1500.
  - **Node Name:** Specify the name of the Archive Node. You must enter the name (arc-user) that you registered on the TSM middleware server.
  - **User Name:** Specify the user name the ARC service uses to log in to the TSM server. Enter the default user name (arc-user) or the administrative user you specified for the Archive Node.
  - **Password:** Specify the password used by the ARC service to log in to the TSM server.
  - **Management Class:** Specify the default management class to use if a management class is not specified when the object is being saved to the StorageGRID system, or the specified management class is not defined on the TSM middleware server.
  - **Number of Sessions:** Specify the number of tape drives on the TSM middleware server that are dedicated to the Archive Node. The Archive Node concurrently creates a maximum of one session per mount point plus a small number of additional sessions (less than five).



You must change this value to be the same as the value set for MAXNUMMP (maximum number of mount points) when the Archive Node was registered or updated. (In the register command, the default value of MAXNUMMP used is 1, if no value is set.)

You must also change the value of MAXSESSIONS for the TSM server to a number that is at least as large as the Number of Sessions set for the ARC service. The default value of MAXSESSIONS on the TSM server is 25.

- **Maximum Retrieve Sessions:** Specify the maximum number of sessions that the ARC service can open to the TSM middleware server for retrieve operations. In most cases, the appropriate value is Number of Sessions minus Maximum Store Sessions. If you need to share one tape drive for storage and retrieval, specify a value equal to the Number of Sessions.
- **Maximum Store Sessions:** Specify the maximum number of concurrent sessions that the ARC service can open to the TSM middleware server for archive operations.

This value should be set to one except when the targeted archival storage system is full and only retrievals can be performed. Set this value to zero to use all sessions for retrievals.

7. Click **Apply Changes**.

#### Optimizing an Archive Node for TSM middleware sessions

You can optimize the performance of an Archive Node that connects to Tivoli Server Manager (TSM) by configuring the Archive Node's sessions.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

#### About this task

Typically, the number of concurrent sessions that the Archive Node has open to the TSM middleware server is set to the number of tape drives the TSM server has dedicated to the Archive Node. One tape drive is allocated for storage while the rest are allocated for retrieval. However, in situations where a Storage Node is being rebuilt from Archive Node copies or the Archive Node is operating in Read-only mode, you can optimize TSM server performance by setting the maximum number of retrieve sessions to be the same as number of concurrent sessions. The result is that all drives can be used concurrently for retrieval, and, at most, one of these drives can also be used for storage if applicable.


#### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Target**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.
4. Change **Maximum Retrieve Sessions** to be the same as **Number of Sessions**.



OverviewAlarmsReportsConfiguration

MainAlarms



Configuration: ARC (DC1-ARC1-98-165) - Target

Updated: 2015-09-28 09:56:36 PDT

---

Target Type:

Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM)

Tivoli Storage Manager State:

Online

Target (TSM) Account

---

Server IP or Hostname:

10.10.10.123

Server Port:

1500

Node Name:

ARC-USER

User Name:

arc-user

Password:

••••••

Management Class:

sg-mgmtclass

Number of Sessions:

2


Maximum Retrieve Sessions:

2

Maximum Store Sessions:

1

Apply Changes



5. Click **Apply Changes**.

#### Configuring the archive state and counters for TSM

If your Archive Node connects to a TSM middleware server, you can configure an Archive Node's archive store state to Online or Offline. You can also disable the archive store when the Archive Node first starts up, or reset the failure count being tracked for the associated alarm.

#### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.


#### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Store**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.



OverviewAlarmsReportsConfiguration

MainAlarms



Configuration: ARC (DC1-ARC1-98-165) - Store

Updated: 2015-09-29 17:10:12 PDT

---

Store State


Online

Archive Store Disabled on Startup

☐

Reset Store Failure Count

☐

Apply Changes 

4. Modify the following settings, as necessary:

- Store State: Set the component state to either:
  - Online: The Archive Node is available to process object data for storage to the archival storage system.
  - Offline: The Archive Node is not available to process object data for storage to the archival storage system.
- Archive Store Disabled on Startup: When selected, the Archive Store component remains in the Read-only state when restarted. Used to persistently disable storage to the targeted the archival storage system. Useful when the targeted the archival storage system is unable to accept content.
- Reset Store Failure Count: Reset the counter for store failures. This can be used to clear the ARVF (Stores Failure) alarm.

5. Click **Apply Changes**.

## Related information

[Managing an Archive Node when TSM server reaches capacity](#)

### Managing an Archive Node when TSM server reaches capacity

The TSM server has no way to notify the Archive Node when either the TSM database or the archival media storage managed by the TSM server is nearing capacity. The Archive Node continues to accept object data for transfer to the TSM server after the TSM server stops accepting new content. This content cannot be written to media managed by the TSM server. An alarm is triggered if this happens. This situation can be avoided through proactive monitoring of the TSM server.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### About this task

To prevent the ARC service from sending further content to the TSM server, you can take the Archive Node offline by taking its **ARC > Store** component offline. This procedure can also be useful in preventing alarms when the TSM server is unavailable for maintenance.



## Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Store**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.

Overview Alarms Reports Configuration

Main Alarms

Configuration: ARC (DC1-ARC1-98-165) - Store  
Updated: 2015-05-07 12:39:07 PDT

Store State	Offline
Archive Store Disabled on Startup	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reset Store Failure Count	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Changes

4. Change **Store State** to *Offline*.
5. Select **Archive Store Disabled on Startup**.
6. Click **Apply Changes**.

## Setting Archive Node to read-only if TSM middleware reaches capacity

If the targeted TSM middleware server reaches capacity, the Archive Node can be optimized to only perform retrievals.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

## Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Target**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.
4. Change Maximum Retrieve Sessions to be the same as the number of concurrent sessions listed in Number of Sessions.
5. Change Maximum Store Sessions to 0.



Changing Maximum Store Sessions to 0 is not necessary if the Archive Node is Read-only. Store sessions will not be created.

6. Click **Apply Changes**.

## Configuring Archive Node retrieve settings

You can configure the retrieve settings for an Archive Node to set the state to Online or



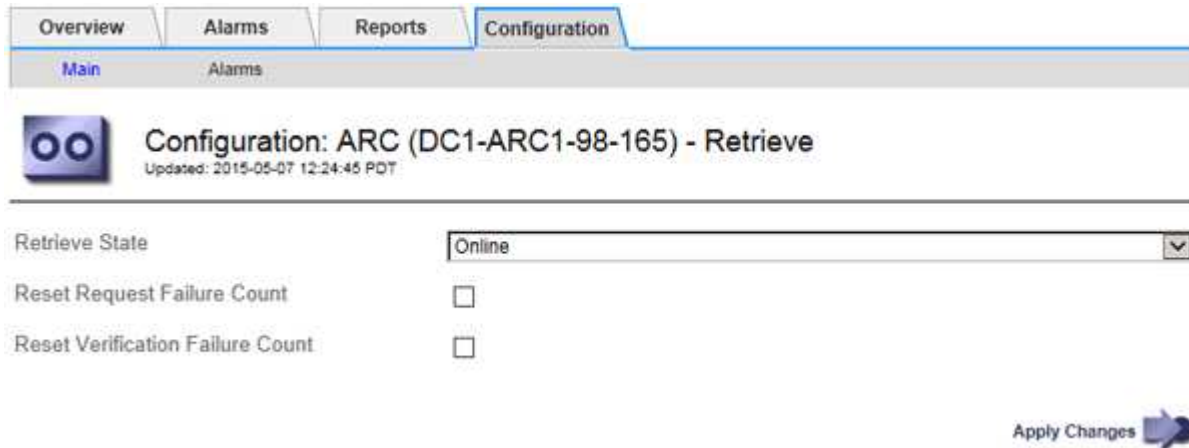
Offline, or reset the failure counts being tracked for the associated alarms.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Retrieve**.
3. Select **Configuration > Main**.



Configuration: ARC (DC1-ARC1-98-165) - Retrieve  
Updated: 2015-05-07 12:24:45 PDT

Retrieve State	Online
Reset Request Failure Count	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reset Verification Failure Count	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Changes

4. Modify the following settings, as necessary:
  - **Retrieve State:** Set the component state to either:
    - Online: The grid node is available to retrieve object data from the archival media device.
    - Offline: The grid node is not available to retrieve object data.
  - Reset Request Failures Count: Select the check box to reset the counter for request failures. This can be used to clear the ARRF (Request Failures) alarm.
  - Reset Verification Failure Count: Select the check box to reset the counter for verification failures on retrieved object data. This can be used to clear the ARRV (Verification Failures) alarm.
5. Click **Apply Changes**.

### Configuring Archive Node replication

You can configure the replication settings for an Archive Node and disable inbound and outbound replication, or reset the failure counts being tracked for the associated alarms.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.

### Steps

1. Select **Support > Tools > Grid Topology**.
2. Select **Archive Node > ARC > Replication**.



3. Select **Configuration > Main**.

Overview Alarms Reports **Configuration**

Main Alarms

Configuration: ARC (DC1-ARC1-98-165) - Replication  
Updated: 2015-05-07 12:21:53 PDT

---

Reset Inbound Replication Failure Count ☐

Reset Outbound Replication Failure Count ☐

**Inbound Replication**

---

Disable Inbound Replication ☐

**Outbound Replication**

---

Disable Outbound Replication ☐

Apply Changes

4. Modify the following settings, as necessary:

- **Reset Inbound Replication Failure Count:** Select to reset the counter for inbound replication failures. This can be used to clear the RIRF (Inbound Replications — Failed) alarm.
- **Reset Outbound Replication Failure Count:** Select to reset the counter for outbound replication failures. This can be used to clear the RORF (Outbound Replications — Failed) alarm.
- **Disable Inbound Replication:** Select to disable inbound replication as part of a maintenance or testing procedure. Leave cleared during normal operation.

When inbound replication is disabled, object data can be retrieved from the ARC service for replication to other locations in the StorageGRID system, but objects cannot be replicated to this ARC service from other system locations. The ARC service is read-only.

- **Disable Outbound Replication:** Select the check box to disable outbound replication (including content requests for HTTP retrievals) as part of a maintenance or testing procedure. Leave unchecked during normal operation.

When outbound replication is disabled, object data can be copied to this ARC service to satisfy ILM rules, but object data cannot be retrieved from the ARC service to be copied to other locations in the StorageGRID system. The ARC service is write-only.

5. Click **Apply Changes**.

## Setting Custom alarms for the Archive Node

You should establish Custom alarms for the ARQL and ARRL attributes that are used to monitor the speed and efficiency of object data retrieval from the archival storage system by the Archive Node.

- **ARQL:** Average Queue Length. The average time, in microseconds, that object data is queued for retrieval from the archival storage system.



- **ARRL:** Average Request Latency. The average time, in microseconds, needed by the Archive Node to retrieve object data from the archival storage system.

The acceptable values for these attributes depend on how the archival storage system is configured and used. (Go to **ARC > Retrieve > Overview > Main**.) The values set for request timeouts and the number of sessions made available for retrieve requests are particularly influential.

After integration is complete, monitor the Archive Node's object data retrievals to establish values for normal retrieval times and queue lengths. Then, create Custom alarms for ARQL and ARRL that will trigger if an abnormal operating condition arises.

#### **Related information**

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

## **Integrating Tivoli Storage Manager**

This section includes best practices and set-up information for integrating an Archive Node with a Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) server, including Archive Node operational details that impact the configuration of the TSM server.

- [Archive Node configuration and operation](#)
- [Configuration best practices](#)
- [Completing the Archive Node setup](#)

### **Archive Node configuration and operation**

Your StorageGRID system manages the Archive Node as a location where objects are stored indefinitely and are always accessible.

When an object is ingested, copies are made to all required locations, including Archive Nodes, based on the Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) rules defined for your StorageGRID system. The Archive Node acts as a client to a TSM server, and the TSM client libraries are installed on the Archive Node by the StorageGRID software installation process. Object data directed to the Archive Node for storage is saved directly to the TSM server as it is received. The Archive Node does not stage object data before saving it to the TSM server, nor does it perform object aggregation. However, the Archive Node can submit multiple copies to the TSM server in a single transaction when data rates warrant.

After the Archive Node saves object data to the TSM server, the object data is managed by the TSM server using its lifecycle/retention policies. These retention policies must be defined to be compatible with the operation of the Archive Node. That is, object data saved by the Archive Node must be stored indefinitely and must always be accessible by the Archive Node, unless it is deleted by the Archive Node.

There is no connection between the StorageGRID system's ILM rules and the TSM server's lifecycle/retention policies. Each operates independently of the other; however, as each object is ingested into the StorageGRID system, you can assign it a TSM management class. This management class is passed to the TSM server along with object data. Assigning different management classes to different object types permits you to configure the TSM server to place object data in different storage pools, or to apply different migration or retention policies as required. For example, objects identified as database backups (temporary content that can be overwritten with newer data) might be treated differently than application data (fixed content that must be retained indefinitely).

The Archive Node can be integrated with a new or an existing TSM server; it does not require a dedicated TSM



server. TSM servers can be shared with other clients, provided that the TSM server is sized appropriately for the maximum expected load. TSM must be installed on a server or virtual machine separate from the Archive Node.

It is possible to configure more than one Archive Node to write to the same TSM server; however, this configuration is only recommended if the Archive Nodes write different sets of data to the TSM server. Configuring more than one Archive Node to write to the same TSM server is not recommended when each Archive Node writes copies of the same object data to the archive. In the latter scenario, both copies are subject to a single point of failure (the TSM server) for what are supposed to be independent, redundant copies of object data.

Archive Nodes do not make use of the Hierarchical Storage Management (HSM) component of TSM.

### **Configuration best practices**

When you are sizing and configuring your TSM server there are best practices you should apply to optimize it to work with the Archive Node.

When sizing and configuring the TSM server, you should consider the following factors:

- Because the Archive Node does not aggregate objects before saving them to the TSM server, the TSM database must be sized to hold references to all objects that will be written to the Archive Node.
- Archive Node software cannot tolerate the latency involved in writing objects directly to tape or other removable media. Therefore, the TSM server must be configured with a disk storage pool for the initial storage of data saved by the Archive Node whenever removable media are used.
- You must configure TSM retention policies to use event-based retention. The Archive Node does not support creation-based TSM retention policies. Use the following recommended settings of `retmin=0` and `retver=0` in the retention policy (which indicates that retention begins when the Archive Node triggers a retention event, and is retained for 0 days after that). However, these values for `retmin` and `retver` are optional.

The disk pool must be configured to migrate data to the tape pool (that is, the tape pool must be the `NXTSTGPOOL` of the disk pool). The tape pool must not be configured as a copy pool of the disk pool with simultaneous write to both pools (that is, the tape pool cannot be a `COPYSTGPOOL` for the disk pool). To create offline copies of the tapes containing Archive Node data, configure the TSM server with a second tape pool that is a copy pool of the tape pool used for Archive Node data.

### **Completing the Archive Node setup**

The Archive Node is not functional after you complete the installation process. Before the StorageGRID system can save objects to the TSM Archive Node, you must complete the installation and configuration of the TSM server and configure the Archive Node to communicate with the TSM server.

For more information about optimizing TSM retrieval and store sessions, see information about managing archival storage.

- [Managing Archive Nodes](#)

Refer to the following IBM documentation, as necessary, as you prepare your TSM server for integration with the Archive Node in a StorageGRID system:



- [IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide](#)
- [IBM Tape Device Drivers Programming Reference](#)

### Installing a new TSM server

You can integrate the Archive Node with either a new or an existing TSM server. If you are installing a new TSM server, follow the instructions in your TSM documentation to complete the installation.



An Archive Node cannot be co-hosted with a TSM server.

### Configuring the TSM server

This section includes sample instructions for preparing a TSM server following TSM best practices.

The following instructions guide you through the process of:

- Defining a disk storage pool, and a tape storage pool (if required) on the TSM server
- Defining a domain policy that uses the TSM management class for the data saved from the Archive Node, and registering a node to use this domain policy

These instructions are provided for your guidance only; they are not intended to replace TSM documentation, or to provide complete and comprehensive instructions suitable for all configurations. Deployment specific instructions should be provided by a TSM administrator who is familiar both with your detailed requirements, and with the complete set of TSM Server documentation.

### Defining TSM tape and disk storage pools

The Archive Node writes to a disk storage pool. To archive content to tape, you must configure the disk storage pool to move content to a tape storage pool.

#### About this task

For a TSM server, you must define a tape storage pool and a disk storage pool within Tivoli Storage Manager. After the disk pool is defined, create a disk volume and assign it to the disk pool. A tape pool is not required if your TSM server uses disk-only storage.

You must complete a number of steps on your TSM server before you can create a tape storage pool. (Create a tape library and at least one drive in the tape library. Define a path from the server to the library and from the server to the drives, and then define a device class for the drives.) The details of these steps can vary depending upon the hardware configuration and storage requirements of the site. For more information, see the TSM documentation.

The following set of instructions illustrates the process. You should be aware that the requirements for your site could be different depending on the requirements of your deployment. For configuration details and for instructions, see the TSM documentation.



You must log onto the server with administrative privileges and use the dsmadm tool to execute the following commands.

### Steps



1. Create a tape library.

```
define library tapelibrary libtype=scsi
```

Where *tapelibrary* is an arbitrary name chosen for the tape library, and the value of *libtype* can vary depending upon the type of tape library.

2. Define a path from the server to the tape library.

```
define path servername tapelibrary srctype=server desttype=library device=lib-  
devicename
```

- *servername* is the name of the TSM server
- *tapelibrary* is the tape library name you defined
- *lib-devicename* is the device name for the tape library

3. Define a drive for the library.

```
define drive tapelibrary drivename
```

- *drivename* is the name you want to specify for the drive
- *tapelibrary* is the tape library name you defined

You might want to configure an additional drive or drives, depending upon your hardware configuration. (For example, if the TSM server is connected to a Fibre Channel switch that has two inputs from a tape library, you might want to define a drive for each input.)

4. Define a path from the server to the drive you defined.

```
define path servername drivename srctype=server desttype=drive  
library=tapelibrary device=drive-dname
```

- *drive-dname* is the device name for the drive
- *tapelibrary* is the tape library name you defined

Repeat for each drive that you have defined for the tape library, using a separate *drivename* and *drive-dname* for each drive.

5. Define a device class for the drives.

```
define devclass DeviceClassName devtype=lto library=tapelibrary  
format=tapetype
```

- *DeviceClassName* is the name of the device class
- *lto* is the type of drive connected to the server
- *tapelibrary* is the tape library name you defined
- *tapetype* is the tape type; for example, *ultrium3*

6. Add tape volumes to the inventory for the library.



```
checkin libvolume tapelibrary
```

*tapelibrary* is the tape library name you defined.

## 7. Create the primary tape storage pool.

```
define stgpool SGWSTapePool DeviceClassName description=description  
collocate=filespace maxscratch=XX
```

- *SGWSTapePool* is the name of the Archive Node's tape storage pool. You can select any name for the tape storage pool (as long as the name uses the syntax conventions expected by the TSM server).
- *DeviceClassName* is the name of the device class name for the tape library.
- *description* is a description of the storage pool that can be displayed on the TSM server using the query stgpool command. For example: "Tape storage pool for the Archive Node."
- *collocate=filespace* specifies that the TSM server should write objects from the same file space into a single tape.
- *XX* is one of the following:
  - The number of empty tapes in the tape library (in the case that the Archive Node is the only application using the library).
  - The number of tapes allocated for use by the StorageGRID system (in instances where the tape library is shared).

## 8. On a TSM server, create a disk storage pool. At the TSM server's administrative console, enter

```
define stgpool SGWSDiskPool disk description=description  
maxsize=maximum_file_size nextstgpool=SGWSTapePool highmig=percent_high  
lowmig=percent_low
```

- *SGWSDiskPool* is the name of the Archive Node's disk pool. You can select any name for the disk storage pool (as long as the name uses the syntax conventions expected by the TSM).
- *description* is a description of the storage pool that can be displayed on the TSM server using the query stgpool command. For example, "Disk storage pool for the Archive Node."
- *maximum\_file\_size* forces objects larger than this size to be written directly to tape, rather than being cached in the disk pool. It is recommended to set *maximum\_file\_size* to 10 GB.
- *nextstgpool=SGWSTapePool* refers the disk storage pool to the tape storage pool defined for the Archive Node.
- *percent\_high* sets the value at which the disk pool begins to migrate its contents to the tape pool. It is recommended to set *percent\_high* to 0 so that data migration begins immediately
- *percent\_low* sets the value at which migration to the tape pool stops. It is recommended to set *percent\_low* to 0 to clear out the disk pool.

## 9. On a TSM server, create a disk volume (or volumes) and assign it to the disk pool.

```
define volume SGWSDiskPool volume_name formatsize=size
```

- *SGWSDiskPool* is the disk pool name.
- *volume\_name* is the full path to the location of the volume (for example, `/var/local/arc/stage6.dsm`) on the TSM server where it writes the contents of the disk pool in



preparation for transfer to tape.

- *size* is the size, in MB, of the disk volume.

For example, to create a single disk volume such that the contents of a disk pool fill a single tape, set the value of *size* to 200000 when the tape volume has a capacity of 200 GB.

However, it might be desirable to create multiple disk volumes of a smaller size, as the TSM server can write to each volume in the disk pool. For example, if the tape size is 250 GB, create 25 disk volumes with a size of 10 GB (10000) each.

The TSM server preallocates space in the directory for the disk volume. This can take some time to complete (more than three hours for a 200 GB disk volume).

## Defining a domain policy and registering a node

You need to define a domain policy that uses the TSM management class for the data saved from the Archive Node, and then register a node to use this domain policy.



Archive Node processes can leak memory if the client password for the Archive Node in Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) expires. Ensure that the TSM server is configured so the client username/password for the Archive Node never expires.

When registering a node on the TSM server for the use of the Archive Node (or updating an existing node), you must specify the number of mount points that the node can use for write operations by specifying the **MAXNUMMP** parameter to the **REGISTER NODE** command. The number of mount points is typically equivalent to the number of tape drive heads allocated to the Archive Node. The number specified for **MAXNUMMP** on the TSM server must be at least as large as the value set for the **ARC > Target > Configuration > Main > Maximum Store Sessions** for the Archive Node, which is set to a value of 0 or 1, as concurrent store sessions are not supported by the Archive Node.

The value of **MAXSESSIONS** set for the TSM server controls the maximum number of sessions that can be opened to the TSM server by all client applications. The value of **MAXSESSIONS** specified on the TSM must be at least as large as the value specified for **ARC > Target > Configuration > Main > Number of Sessions** in the Grid Manager for the Archive Node. The Archive Node concurrently creates at most one session per mount point plus a small number (< 5) of additional sessions.

The TSM node assigned to the Archive Node uses a custom domain policy `tsm-domain`. The `tsm-domain` domain policy is a modified version of the “standard” domain policy, configured to write to tape and with the archive destination set to be the StorageGRID system’s storage pool (`SGWSDiskPool`).



You must log in to the TSM server with administrative privileges and use the `dsmadm` tool to create and activate the domain policy.

## Creating and activating the domain policy

You must create a domain policy and then activate it to configure the TSM server to save data sent from the Archive Node.

### Steps

1. Create a domain policy.



```
copy domain standard tsm-domain
```

2. If you are not using an existing management class, enter one of the following:

```
define policyset tsm-domain standard
```

```
define mgmtclass tsm-domain standard default
```

*default* is the default management class for the deployment.

3. Create a copygroup to the appropriate storage pool. Enter (on one line):

```
define copygroup tsm-domain standard default type=archive  
destination=SGWSDiskPool retinit=event retmin=0 retver=0
```

*default* is the default Management Class for the Archive Node. The values of *retinit*, *retmin*, and *retver* have been chosen to reflect the retention behavior currently used by the Archive Node



Do not set *retinit* to *retinit=create*. Setting *retinit=create* blocks the Archive Node from deleting content since retention events are used to remove content from the TSM server.

4. Assign the management class to be the default.

```
assign defmgmtclass tsm-domain standard default
```

5. Set the new policy set as active.

```
activate policyset tsm-domain standard
```

Ignore the “no backup copy group” warning that appears when you enter the activate command.

6. Register a node to use the new policy set on the TSM server. On the TSM server, enter (on one line):

```
register node arc-user arc-password passexp=0 domain=tsm-domain  
MAXNUMMP=number-of-sessions
```

*arc-user* and *arc-password* are same client node name and password as you define on the Archive Node, and the value of *MAXNUMMP* is set to the number of tape drives reserved for Archive Node store sessions.



By default, registering a node creates an administrative user ID with client owner authority, with the password defined for the node.

## Migrating data into StorageGRID

You can migrate large amounts of data to the StorageGRID system while simultaneously using the StorageGRID system for day-to-day operations.

The following section is a guide to understanding and planning a migration of large amounts of data into the StorageGRID system. It is not a general guide to data migration, and it does not include detailed steps for



performing a migration. Follow the guidelines and instructions in this section to ensure that data is migrated efficiently into the StorageGRID system without interfering with day-to-day operations, and that the migrated data is handled appropriately by the StorageGRID system.

- [Confirming capacity of the StorageGRID system](#)
- [Determining the ILM policy for migrated data](#)
- [Impact of migration on operations](#)
- [Scheduling data migration](#)
- [Monitoring data migration](#)
- [Creating custom notifications for migration alarms](#)

## Confirming capacity of the StorageGRID system

Before migrating large amounts of data into the StorageGRID system, confirm that the StorageGRID system has the disk capacity to handle the anticipated volume.

If the StorageGRID system includes an Archive Node and a copy of migrated objects has been saved to nearline storage (such as tape), ensure that the Archive Node's storage has sufficient capacity for the anticipated volume of migrated data.

As part of the capacity assessment, look at the data profile of the objects you plan to migrate and calculate the amount of disk capacity required. For details about monitoring the disk capacity of your StorageGRID system, see the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID.

### Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)

[Managing Storage Nodes](#)

## Determining the ILM policy for migrated data

The StorageGRID system's ILM policy determines how many copies are made, the locations to which copies are stored, and for how long these copies are retained. An ILM policy consists of a set of ILM rules that describe how to filter objects and manage object data over time.

Depending on how migrated data is used and your requirements for migrated data, you might want to define unique ILM rules for migrated data that are different from the ILM rules used for day-to-day operations. For example, if there are different regulatory requirements for day-to-day data management than there are for the data that is included in the migration, you might want a different number of copies of the migrated data on a different grade of storage.

You can configure rules that apply exclusively to migrated data if it is possible to uniquely distinguish between migrated data and object data saved from day-to-day operations.

If you can reliably distinguish between the types of data using one of the metadata criteria, you can use this criteria to define an ILM rule that applies only to migrated data.

Before beginning data migration, ensure that you understand the StorageGRID system's ILM policy and how it will apply to migrated data, and that you have made and tested any changes to the ILM policy.





An ILM policy that has been incorrectly specified can cause unrecoverable data loss. Carefully review all changes you make to an ILM policy before activating it to make sure the policy will work as intended.

#### Related information

[Manage objects with ILM](#)

## Impact of migration on operations

A StorageGRID system is designed to provide efficient operation for object storage and retrieval, and to provide excellent protection against data loss through the seamless creation of redundant copies of object data and metadata.

However, data migration must be carefully managed according to the instructions in this chapter to avoid having an impact on day-to-day system operations, or, in extreme cases, placing data at risk of loss in case of a failure in the StorageGRID system.

Migration of large quantities of data places additional load on the system. When the StorageGRID system is heavily loaded, it responds more slowly to requests to store and retrieve objects. This can interfere with store and retrieve requests which are integral to day-to-day operations. Migration can also cause other operational issues. For example, when a Storage Node is nearing capacity, the heavy intermittent load due to batch ingest can cause the Storage Node to cycle between read-only and read-write, generating notifications.

If the heavy loading persists, queues can develop for various operations that the StorageGRID system must perform to ensure full redundancy of object data and metadata.

Data migration must be carefully managed according to the guidelines in this document to ensure safe and efficient operation of the StorageGRID system during migration. When migrating data, ingest objects in batches or continuously throttle ingest. Then, continuously monitor the StorageGRID system to ensure that various attribute values are not exceeded.

## Scheduling data migration

Avoid migrating data during core operational hours. Limit data migration to evenings, weekends, and other times when system usage is low.

If possible, do not schedule data migration during periods of high activity. However, if it is not practical to completely avoid the high activity period, it is safe to proceed as long as you closely monitor the relevant attributes and take action if they exceed acceptable values.

#### Related information

[Monitoring data migration](#)

## Monitoring data migration

Data migration must be monitored and adjusted as necessary to ensure data is placed according to the ILM policy within the required timeframe.

This table lists the attributes you must monitor during data migration, and the issues that they represent.

If you use traffic classification policies with rate limits to throttle ingest, you can monitor the observed rate in conjunction with the statistics described in the following table and reduce the limits if necessary.



Monitor	Description
Number of objects waiting for ILM evaluation	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select <b>Support &gt; Tools &gt; Grid Topology</b>.</li> <li>2. Select <b>deployment &gt; Overview &gt; Main</b>.</li> <li>3. In the ILM Activity section, monitor the number of objects shown for the following attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Awaiting - All (XQUZ)</b>: The total number of objects awaiting ILM evaluation.</li> <li>◦ <b>Awaiting - Client (XCQZ)</b>: The total number of objects awaiting ILM evaluation from client operations (for example, ingest).</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. If the number of objects shown for either of these attributes exceeds 100,000, throttle the ingest rate of objects to reduce the load on the StorageGRID system.</li> </ol>
Targeted archival system's storage capacity	If the ILM policy saves a copy of the migrated data to a targeted archival storage system (tape or the cloud), monitor the capacity of the targeted archival storage system to ensure that there is sufficient capacity for the migrated data.
<b>Archive Node &gt; ARC &gt; Store</b>	If an alarm for the <b>Store Failures (ARVF)</b> attribute is triggered, the targeted archival storage system might have reached capacity. Check the targeted archival storage system and resolve any issues that triggered an alarm.

## Creating custom notifications for migration alarms

You might want StorageGRID to send alert notifications or alarm (legacy system) notifications to the system administrator responsible for monitoring migration if certain values exceed recommended thresholds.

### What you'll need

- You must be signed in to the Grid Manager using a supported browser.
- You must have specific access permissions.
- You must have configured email settings for alert (or alarm) notifications.

### Steps

1. Create a custom alert rule or a Global Custom alarm for each Prometheus metric or StorageGRID attribute you want to monitor during data migration.

Alerts are triggered based on Prometheus metric values. Alarms are triggered based on attribute values. See the instructions for monitoring and troubleshooting StorageGRID for more information.

2. Disable the custom alert rule or the Global Custom alarm after data migration is complete.

Note that Global Custom alarms override Default alarms.

### Related information

[Monitor & troubleshoot](#)



## Copyright information

Copyright © 2025 NetApp, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Printed in the U.S. No part of this document covered by copyright may be reproduced in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or storage in an electronic retrieval system—without prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Software derived from copyrighted NetApp material is subject to the following license and disclaimer:

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NETAPP “AS IS” AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WHICH ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NETAPP BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

NetApp reserves the right to change any products described herein at any time, and without notice. NetApp assumes no responsibility or liability arising from the use of products described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by NetApp. The use or purchase of this product does not convey a license under any patent rights, trademark rights, or any other intellectual property rights of NetApp.

The product described in this manual may be protected by one or more U.S. patents, foreign patents, or pending applications.

LIMITED RIGHTS LEGEND: Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (b)(3) of the Rights in Technical Data -Noncommercial Items at DFARS 252.227-7013 (FEB 2014) and FAR 52.227-19 (DEC 2007).

Data contained herein pertains to a commercial product and/or commercial service (as defined in FAR 2.101) and is proprietary to NetApp, Inc. All NetApp technical data and computer software provided under this Agreement is commercial in nature and developed solely at private expense. The U.S. Government has a non-exclusive, non-transferrable, nonsublicensable, worldwide, limited irrevocable license to use the Data only in connection with and in support of the U.S. Government contract under which the Data was delivered. Except as provided herein, the Data may not be used, disclosed, reproduced, modified, performed, or displayed without the prior written approval of NetApp, Inc. United States Government license rights for the Department of Defense are limited to those rights identified in DFARS clause 252.227-7015(b) (FEB 2014).

## Trademark information

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed at <http://www.netapp.com/TM> are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.